

# Enhanced College Writing



# Enhanced College Writing

*BUNKER HILL COMMUNITY COLLEGE*

PROFESSOR EMERITUS FAYE EICHHOLZER



*Enhanced College Writing Copyright © 2014 by Lumen Learning is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License, except where otherwise noted.*

Cover Image: <http://mrg.bz/pqHoUU>

# Contents

About This Course	xiii
-------------------	------

## Part I. Instructor Resources

1. Instructor Welcome	3
2. Sources for Reading Material	5
3. Tips for e-Teaching	12
4. Digital Storytelling Unit	15
5. Jeopardy Game	22
6. Annotation Assignments	23
7. Media Annotation Assignments	26
8. Summary Assignments	32
9. Writing Process Essay Materials	35
10. Definition Essay Materials	38
11. Narrative Essay Materials	41
12. Illustration/Example Essay Materials	51
13. Compare/Contrast Essay Materials	62
14. Cause and Effect Essay Materials	72
15. Argument Essay Materials	83
16. Literature Options	99
17. I Need Help	103

## Part II. An Overview of the Writing Process

18. Introduction to the Writing Process	107
---	-----

19. Introduction to Writing	108
20. Your Role as a Learner	133
21. What is an Essay?	147
22. Reading to Write	150
23. Defining the Writing Process	155
24. Videos: Prewriting Techniques	158
25. Audience	160
26. Thesis Statements	167
27. Organizing an Essay	174
28. Creating Paragraphs	180
29. Paragraphs	183
30. Conclusions	193
31. Revising	199
32. Editing and Proofreading	217
33. Matters of Grammar, Mechanics, and Style	220
34. Peer Review Checklist	222
35. Comparative Chart of Writing Strategies	224

### Part III. Using Sources

36. Evidence	239
37. Quoting, Paraphrasing, and Avoiding Plagiarism	252
38. MLA Format	265
39. Formatting the Works Cited Page (MLA)	268
40. Citing Paraphrases and Summaries (APA)	274
41. APA Citation Style, 6th edition: General Style Guidelines	278

### Part IV. Definition Essay

42. Definitional Argument Essay	287
---------------------------------	-----

43. How to Write a Definition Essay	290
44. Critical Thinking	299
45. Video: Thesis Explained	304
46. Effective Thesis Statements	305
47. Student Sample: Definition Essay	311

## Part V. Narrative Essay

48. Introduction to Narrative Essay	315
49. Student Sample: Narrative Essay	317
50. "Shooting an Elephant" by George Orwell	320
51. "Sixty-nine Cents" by Gary Shteyngart	321
52. Video: The Danger of a Single Story	322
53. How to Write an Annotation	323
54. How to Write a Summary	327
55. Writing for Success: Narration	329
Anonymous	
56. Student Sample: Narrative Essay	337

## Part VI. Illustration/Example Essay

57. Introduction to Illustration/Example Essay	341
58. "She's Your Basic L.O.L. in N.A.D" by Perri Klass	342
59. "April & Paris" by David Sedaris	343
60. Writing for Success: Illustration/Example	344
Anonymous	
61. Student Sample: Illustration/Example Essay	350

## Part VII. Compare/Contrast Essay

62. Introduction to Compare/Contrast Essay	355
Anonymous	
63. "Disability" by Nancy Mairs	356
64. "Friending, Ancient or Otherwise" by Alex Wright	357
65. "A South African Storm" by Allison Howard	358
66. Writing for Success: Compare/Contrast	362
Anonymous	
67. Student Sample: Compare/Contrast Essay	370

## Part VIII. Cause and Effect Essay

68. Introduction to Cause and Effect Essay	375
Anonymous	
69. "Cultural Baggage" by Barbara Ehrenreich	377
70. "Women in Science" by K.C. Cole	378
71. Writing for Success: Cause and Effect	379
Anonymous	
72. Student Sample: Cause and Effect Essay	385

## Part IX. Argument Essay

73. Introduction to Argument Essay	389
Anonymous	
74. Rogerian Argument	390
75. "The Case Against Torture," by Alisa Soloman	394
76. "The Case for Torture" by Michael Levin	395
77. How to Write a Summary by Paraphrasing Source Material	396



78. Writing for Success: Argument Anonymous	399
79. Student Sample: Argument Essay	411

#### Part X. Grammar/Mechanics Mini-lessons

80. Grammar/Mechanics Mini-lessons	415
81. Mini-lesson: Subjects and Verbs, Irregular Verbs, Subject Verb Agreement	416
82. Mini-lesson: Sentence Types	417
83. Mini-lesson: Fragments I	419
84. Mini-lesson: Run-ons and Comma Splices I	421
85. Mini-lesson: Comma Usage	423
86. Mini-lesson: Parallelism	424
87. Mini-lesson: The Apostrophe	425
88. Mini-lesson: Capital Letters	426
89. Grammar Practice - Interactive Quizzes	427
90. De Copia - Demonstration of the Variety of Language	428
91. Style Exercise: Voice	430

#### Part XI. Course Information

92. Welcome	433
93. Course Schedule-What's Due When?	435
94. Course Learning Activities	438
95. How you will be evaluated	442
96. Course description and objectives	446
97. Instructions for Writing Lab	449

## Part XII. Icebreaker Activities

98. Icebreaker Activities	455
99. SafeAssign Dropbox #1	456
100. Discussion Forum #1	458

## Part XIII. The Writing Process

101. The Writing Process Overview	463
102. Being Specific/Concrete	466
103. Discussion Forum #2	474
104. INSTRUCTIONS FOR WRITING LAB #1	475
105. Essay #1	477

## Part XIV. Narrative

106. Narrative Module Overview	481
107. Sample Student Essay	485
108. EFFIE	488
109. Discussion Forum #3	491
110. Discussion Forum #4	492
111. Instructions for Writing Lab #2	493
112. Narrative Essay	494

## Part XV. Definition

113. Module #3 Overview	497
114. Discussion Forum #5	501
115. READ in ONLINE Textbook	502
116. Instructions for Definition Essay	504
117. Instructions for Writing Lab #3	505

118. Definition Essay	506
-----------------------	-----

#### Part XVI. Research Project

119. Research Project Overview	509
120. Discussion Forum #6	513
121. Research Project	514
122. Instructions for Writing Lab #4	515

#### Part XVII. Argument/Persuasion

123. Module Overview	519
124. Txtng is killing language...	524
125. Discussion Forum #7	525
126. Discussion Forum #8	526
127. Instructions for Writing Lab #5	527
128. Argument Essay	528

#### Part XVIII. Experiential Essay (Real-Life Writing)

129. Experiential Essay (Real-Life Writing)	531
130. Experiential Essay draft letter	533
131. Discussion Forum #9	535
132. Instructions for Writing Lab #6	536
133. Discussion Forum #10	537

#### Part XIX. Culminating Activities

134. Culminating Activity	541
---------------------------	-----



# About This Course

*Introductory composition with an emphasis on essay writing in common rhetorical styles*

Composition I focuses on principles of writing, critical reading and essay composition using rhetorical styles common in college-level writing (narrative, example/illustration, compare/contrast, cause-and-effect, argument).



PART I  
INSTRUCTOR RESOURCES





# I. Instructor Welcome

No matter where you land on the teaching spectrum, the aim of the Open Courses is opening the door to using and improving the best of free and open materials in creative, collaborative, and innovative ways.

Think of this course as a springboard of peer-reviewed, open content already aligned with outcomes and assessments and delivered with flexibility and accessibility in mind to meet the unique needs of you and your learners. While it's possible to “adopt” an Open Course exactly as you find it, you can almost always improve your students’ experience by adapting the materials specifically for them.

The course you are now viewing is an Open Course.

## OER Attribution on Every Page

You may have already noticed each page’s listing of all open educational resources and their respective open licenses under which each OER has been made available. These attribution statements are a legal requirement of the open licenses and also make these resources freely available for you to use. Thus, please keep the attribution statements intact at the bottom of every page.

## How Do I Use an Open Course?

Once the open course is loaded in your learning management

system, you can customize and tailor it to meet the specific needs of your particular students. This may include adding, revising, re-ordering or removing materials in order to fit your course learning outcomes and instructional approach. When customizing your course, be sure that:

- 1) any content you add to the Open Course uses a license that allows you to share it freely, and
- 2) any content you add is attributed correctly to the author or creator.

## 2. Sources for Reading Material

We know that one of the biggest challenges in putting together an OER Composition course is to find good models of writing for our students to read and discuss in class.

Here is an annotated list of where you can find a wide range of primary source material. Some material in this list is OER with Creative Commons license. Some is Public Domain, which means it's open to edit and use in any way you'd like. And much of it is free but copyrighted, which means that you can provide your students a link to the material in this course, but you can't copy the material directly into your textbook.

(An example of how to handle a link to an external, copyrighted source can be found on the “Shooting an Elephant” article page of this textbook.)

### Gallery of Web-Based Texts

**Title:** The Ad Council

**URL:** <http://www.adcouncil.org>

**Brief description:** Includes an archive of more than sixty-five years of public service advertising campaigns in print, radio, and television media.

**Possible uses:** Analyses of rhetorical technique in advertising; studies requiring historical context; comparisons of commercial and public-service marketing.

**Title:** American Experience

**URL:** <http://www.pbs.org/wgbh/americanexperience>

**Brief description:** Full-length documentaries produced by the Public Broadcasting System (PBS), many available for viewing online, with additional resources provided at each film's website.

**Possible uses:** Studies requiring historical context, comparisons of documentary and popular filmmaking, and comparisons of education and entertainment.

**Title:** Arts and Letters Daily

**URL:** <http://www.alldaily.com>

**Brief description:** A clearinghouse of web-based content (from magazines, newspapers, and blogs) on culture and current affairs sponsored by the Chronicle of Higher Education, updated daily, and archived from 1998 to the present.

**Possible uses:** Essays on contemporary topics; studies of the style and ideological cast of a particular commentator or columnist; generating ideas for possible topics for further research.

**Title:** The Avalon Project: Documents in Law, History, and Diplomacy

**URL:** [http://avalon.law.yale.edu/subject\\_menus/major.asp](http://avalon.law.yale.edu/subject_menus/major.asp)

**Brief description:** Yale University Law School's collection of documents, including among many other items "Inaugural Addresses of the Presidents."

**Possible uses:** Cross-disciplinary writing projects in history, religion, and political science; analyses of rhetorical and argumentative strategies.

**Title:** Big Questions Essay Series

**URL:** <http://www.templeton.org/signature-programs/big-questions-essay-series>

**Brief description:** A growing collection from the nonprofit Templeton Foundation, made up of essays by writers from different disciplines and backgrounds on several “big questions” (about a dozen essays per question).

**Possible uses:** Essay assignments on “great questions” requiring citation of conflicting sources; exercises on exploring alternative points of view; analyses of how biases, assumptions, and implications affect argument and rhetoric.

**Title:** C-SPAN Video Library

**URL:** <http://www.c-spanvideo.org/videoLibrary>

**Brief description:** An archive of more than 160,000 hours of digitized video programming on C-SPAN since 1987, including thousands of political debates and campaign ads; also applicable for the education category (see library for hundreds of commencement addresses).

**Possible uses:** Analyses of political advertising and comparisons with other kinds of commercials; analytical summaries of ideological positions along the American political spectrum from 1987 to the present; analyses of argumentative technique in political debates.

**Title:** From Revolution to Reconstruction...and What Happened Afterwards

**URL:** <http://www.let.rug.nl/usa/index.htm>

**Brief description:** A collection of documents from American history from the colonial period to the present, sponsored by the United States Information Agency (USIA).

**Possible uses:** Analyses of rhetorical and argumentative strategies of documents in American history and government.

**Title:** Gallup

**URL:** <http://www.gallup.com/home.aspx>

**Brief description:** More than seventy-five years of polling data on myriad subjects, with constant updates from contemporary polls.

**Possible uses:** Analyses of American political and social trends from the 1930s to the present; comparisons with contemporaneous, parallel polls from other organizations; political science studies of polling methodology.

**Title:** Google Books

**URL:** <http://books.google.com>

**Brief description:** Includes not only in-copyright/in-print and in-copyright/out-of-print books for purchase but also out-of-copyright books as free downloads.

**Possible uses:** Access to free, out-of-print, out-of-copyright, older, book-length content for historical, sociological studies.

**Title:** The Internet Archive

**URL:** <http://www.archive.org>

**Brief description:** Created by The Internet Archive, a nonprofit organization founded in 1996 that is committed to preserving digitized materials, this collection includes not only websites in their original forms but also audio and video collections.

**Possible uses:** Historical analyses of websites since their inception; popular cultural analyses of film, television, radio, music, and advertising.

**Title:** The Living Room Candidate

**URL:** <http://www.livingroomcandidate.org>

**Brief description:** A collection of hundreds of television advertisements of presidential campaigns from 1952 to the present, sponsored and operated by the Museum of the Moving Image.

**Possible uses:** Analyses of the rhetoric of political television advertising across time (from 1952 to the present); comparisons between television and print advertising in politics; summaries of political party positions and ideologies.

**Title:** MIT Open Courseware

**URL:** <http://ocw.mit.edu/index.htm>

**Brief description:** One of the best collections of university lectures on the web, along with Yale's (see Open Yale Courses).

**Possible uses:** Completely free access to complete lecture-based courses from some of the best professors on earth in almost every conceivable university subject.

**Title:** The National Archives Experience: Docs Teach

**URL:** <http://docsteach.org>

**Brief description:** Classroom activities, reading and writing assignments accompanied by document collections from the National Archives, each concentrating on a specific historical era.

**Possible uses:** Ready-made reading and writing assignment sequences of primary documents from American history; cross-disciplinary writing projects in history, religion, political science, and cultural geography.

**Title:** The Online Books Page

**URL:** <http://digital.library.upenn.edu/books>

**Brief description:** A collection of more than forty thousand free books, as well as an extensive e-archive of e-archives (see Archives and Indexes/General), edited by John Mark Ockerbloom at the University of Pennsylvania since 1993.

**Possible uses:** Access to free, out-of-print, out-of-copyright, older, book-length content for historical, sociological studies; cross-disciplinary writing projects in history, religion, political science, and cultural geography.

**Title:** Open Yale Courses

**URL:** <http://oyc.yale.edu>

**Brief description:** One of the best collections of university lectures on the web, along with MIT's (see MIT Open Courseware).

**Possible uses:** Completely free access to complete lecture-based

courses from some of the best professors on earth in almost every conceivable subject.

**Title:** Project Gutenberg

**URL:** [http://www.gutenberg.org/wiki/Main\\_Page](http://www.gutenberg.org/wiki/Main_Page)

**Brief description:** The most established collection of more than thirty-three thousand book-length works originally published in paper form, digitized and downloadable in a variety of formats, and free of American copyright.

**Possible uses:** Analyses of older, book-length literary texts; studies of specific historical and cultural phenomena.

**Title:** the Poetry Foundation

**URL:** <http://www.poetryfoundation.org>

**Brief description:** Thousands of poems and poetry-related material collected into a searchable archive, managed and operated by the Poetry Foundation.

**Possible uses:** Analyses of poems and poetic language; studies of specific themes as expressed through the humanities.

**Title:** The Smithsonian Institution Research Information System (SIRIS): Collections Search Center

**URL:** <http://collections.si.edu/search>

**Brief description:** A vast collection of more than 4.6 million books, manuscripts, periodicals, and other materials from the various museums, archives, and libraries of the Smithsonian Institution.

**Possible uses:** Historical and rhetorical analyses of texts and resources in a variety of disciplines in the arts and sciences.

**Title:** This I Believe

**URL:** <http://thisibelieve.org>

**Brief description:** A regular feature of National Public Radio (NPR) since 2006, a series of personal essays read aloud on a variety of



topics, archived together with 1950s-era essays from a program of the same name hosted by Edward R. Murrow.

**Possible uses:** Comparisons of social issues across two historical periods (e.g., 2006 to the present vs. the 1950s); comparisons between the personal essay and other genres of exposition and exploration; comparisons between oral and written texts.

**Title:** The US Census Bureau

**URL:** <http://www.census.gov>

**Brief description:** A trove of demographic statistics and surveys with a variety of themes from the most recent census and those conducted previously.

**Possible uses:** Summaries, reports, and causal analyses of demographic trends in American society; evaluations of the uses of statistics as evidence; social science studies of polling methodology.

## 3. Tips for e-Teaching

Just as learning online differs in many ways from the traditional classroom, so does teaching online or in the blended learning environment. Indiana University Bloomington's Office of Instructional Consulting has an extensive repository of e-Teaching & Learning sources to help faculty.

### Keeping Accessibility in Mind

According to WebAim, an estimated 20% of the population has a visual, hearing, motor, and/or cognitive disability. Although not all of these disabilities affect the student's experience when accessing online materials, creating materials without accessibility in mind may not only exclude students, it may also violate the law.

To learn more about online teaching with accessibility in mind, visit WebAim's Resources.

You may also check the user resources from your learning management system provider for tips for design, video, and screen reader programs.

### Creating Video and Audio Files

To break up the monotony of text, you may wish to consider creating short (under 5 minutes) video or audio for your students. Your learning management system likely offers tools to easily create video or audio files.

## Creating Screencasts with Jing

You may also wish to create screencasts (narrated video of your computer desktop). An easy-to-use and free application is Jing by TechSmith. To download Jing you'll need administrative permissions. Contact your IT department if you need assistance with downloading Jing.

## Creating a Personal Introduction

One way to assist students in connecting with you is creating a brief introduction using video or audio. As a general rule, simple and short video or audio files (under 5 minutes) work best for online learning.

The following tips may be useful for creating introductions:

### Tips for Video

- Wear dark colors. Stripes and plaid can be distracting.
- Position webcams at eye-level. Laptop views are often directed at the nose.
- Make eye contact with the webcam instead of the computer screen.
- Keep head movements and gestures to a minimum.
- Use lighting from the sides. Lighting from behind makes faces appear shaded.
- Check both the aural and visual “noise.” Is there a whirring fan in the room or messy desk behind you?
- Smile when talking.

### Ideas for Topics

- Include a welcome greeting to students.
- State your name and affiliation with the institution.

- Consider discussing your credentials, teaching experience, research background, alma mater, etc.

## 4. Digital Storytelling Unit

Links will not work in Edit mode. To access materials, either

- click “Preview Changes” option on right side of page, and links will work on that page
- OR, highlight the link you want to access and click on the “chain” icon in the toolbar. Copy and paste the link in a new browser window.

### Essay Assignment

**Length:** 3 minutes (and a script/storyboard)

**Due date:** TBD

**File name:** YourNameDigitalProject.file (mp3, mov, mp4, wmv, etc.)  
– post online (YouTube) or bring on a flash drive

#### **Introduction to the Assignment**

In our class discussions of narrative choices, we often focus on strategies (dialogue), awareness of audience (pacing and tone), and arrangement (5-part dramatic structure). An overlooked factor that plays a big role in each rhetorical situation is genre or medium. In a writing classroom, it is assumed that all assignments are typed in Times New Roman with standard 12-point font and MLA style. However, this isn't how we often see rhetoric in our daily lives. Video, audio, and images bombard us on televisions, social networking sites, and news Web sites. In fact, YouTube has

popularized the vlog (video log) and many post digital first person narratives via Web cam videos on Facebook each day.

In this continuation of your Narration/Description paper, you will construct a digital storytelling project that builds on your previous narrative and further develops your inquiry by engaging what others have said about the topic. In a 3-minute video or audio piece, you will construct an open-ended argument about an issue you can relate to in some specific way by including both your own experience and evidence from research. These two kinds of evidence should mutually inform each other; that is, you should be able to analyze and reflect on your experience through the lens of the research you do, and you should read the research with a critical eye, informed by your own experience. The idea here is that you should use the research to critically consider your experience and develop your argument.

The choice is yours as to which media you will use. Perhaps you feel comfortable filming video with your Macbook or web cam. Maybe you prefer to use still images with an audio voiceover. Be creative and remember that the rhetorical choices of modes you make will impact how your audience understands your Experience and Other Evidence project. Gunther Kress's term transduction – translation from one mode to another – will be one to consider when transforming your script or storyboard into your multimodal project. Want to create a YouTube video? Perfect! A PowToon cartoon? That works. Prezi? Sure.

### **Experience**

For your first paper, you began with your own experience. Now, you will move that to the next level. Consider how some element of your experience relates to a broader situation or issue. We will read and view examples of such connections between personal experience and public issues in the arguments from various Web sites. Many of the authors relate their experiences as a kind of lesson, using imagery, voiceovers, and video as rhetorical tools to persuade their readers.

### **... And Other Experience (a.k.a. Research)**

When academics write and investigate, they bring research to bear on their thinking and writing, informing their experiences with observation, reading, discussion, and conversation. In addition to conveying your own experience of an issue, you will also research the issue, ideally building toward a broad research paper. You will apply your own ideas as evidence in making a claim and you will expand those ideas with research on the topic. You must engage at least 2 other sources in your digital storytelling project, whether they are summarized verbally, quoted in a text overlay, or interviewed on video. Your script will include MLA style citations for all outside material cited or consulted.

No doubt you often make sense of your experiences by talking about them with others and reflecting on them yourselves; if you think of research in the same way, your research and therefore your writing will be richer, more meaningful, and part of your critical development rather than an onerous task.

### **Weaving together Experience and Other Evidence**

The point of this project is not just to talk about two kinds of evidence but to synthesize those two kinds of evidence, using each to inform the other. That is the way research works: each new piece of evidence builds on the evidence that you already have, expanding your understanding and perspective of a given issue. One tactic you may want to use in preparing the paper, while both reflecting on the points you want to make and considering your research, is stasis theory. It might serve as a guide to help you categorize and articulate your ideas. Is the claim you want to argue one of fact, cause, value, action, or jurisdiction? What kinds of claims are the authors of your research making?

### **Technology**

Many of you are familiar with filming video, recording audio, and taking pictures; however, the synthesis of these components into one file will require careful attention to the digital software. We will review free software for audio (Audacity), screen recording

(Camtasia), and slide-based presentation (Microsoft Powerpoint, Prezi).

I encourage you to explore the different software and consult our tutorials posted on Blackboard for more information on how to use each program, but do not feel overwhelmed by all the bells and whistles. Even a Microsoft PowerPoint presentation can piece together video, audio, and imagery to create a successful digital project.

### **Steps:**

1. **Weeks 5 and 6:** I will introduce the assignment and available technology to the class. Please jot down any questions you may have so that you do not fall behind in creating your digital project. You should also begin work on a script for your project as soon as we discuss the assignment, but you will also want to begin filming, taking pictures, and recording audio.
2. **Week 6:** Bring a script/storyboard of your digital storytelling project to class with an audience analysis. This script will integrate evidence in MLA style and demonstrate how you plan to arrange the digital project. This script should be 2-3 pages and include a half-page audience analysis, detailing who your project's intended audience is and why. Since your script should be a helpful document for creating your digital project, it does not need to be in formal, paragraph-based essay form.
3. **Week 8:** We will conduct a digital project workshop for our entire class period. You have this time to work on Camtasia, PowerPoint, or other software in class and receive guidance from peers. Please come prepared with a flash drive or external hard drive that holds all your documents. You may also prefer to bring a laptop that has all of your software installed.
4. **Week 9:** Bring your digital project to class for a "draft workshop." In groups of three, you will view each other's pieces and comment on the following: content, exigence, inquiry, use



of evidence, narrative (showing instead of telling), arrangement of experience and research, technological expertise, pacing, originality, voice/sound quality, and picture/video quality.

(NOTE: Be aware that you may need to make changes to your draft, so save copies of your project at many different stages!)

5. **Week 9:** Digital storytelling project and script will be uploaded to YouTube or transferred to my flash drive in class. We will view some projects at a future date.

## Sample Topics

Here are some topics that students in past classes have used for this type of assignment. Some students later narrowed down a particular topic to use it as their research topic for the rest of the semester:

- Stereotypes about Africa perpetuated by US educational system
- School uniforms
- The differences in the ecological mindset of Germans and Americans as represented by their cars
- Same-sex vs. mixed-gender education
- Multiculturalism in the American educational system
- Stereotypes of Asian students as geniuses
- Sexism in the workplace in Latin America (later narrowed down to relationship of sexism to underdevelopment)
- Racial profiling in airports
- Opportunities for amateur sports in Europe and America
- School tracking
- McDonaldization
- Religion and orthodoxy, or how religion affects our personal

choices

- Images of beauty in the media and African American women (later narrowed down to the issue of skin bleaching)
- SAT tests
- Growing in a single-parent household
- Stereotypes due to accents
- Drug testing of low-wage workers or high school students
- Sexual harassment in certain professions
- Teaching evolution versus creation science or intelligent design
- The effects of advertising on childhood obesity
- Hiring practices based on appearance (such as Abercrombie and Fitch's policy)
- Racial self-segregation in high school lunchrooms
- Culture of "whiteness"
- Addiction to computer games
- Immigration and its effect on labor-intensive industry
- The challenges faced by first-generation college students
- Metal detectors and other security measures in high schools
- The deterioration of the coastal environment
- Religion in schools
- Asian Americans and Affirmative Action

This list is not meant to provide you with a list of topics to choose from; rather, use this list to *think about* the kinds of topics that students write about that relate to larger issues. The most successful papers tend to come out of topics that are more original to the student writing the paper.

## Supporting Resources

<https://couros.wikispaces.com/digitalstorytelling>

<http://www.kleinspiration.com/2012/11/10-apps-sites-for-digital-storytelling.html>

<http://www.socialbrite.org/2010/07/15/digital-storytelling-a-tutorial-in-10-easy-steps/>

<http://net.educause.edu/ir/library/pdf/ELI7021.pdf>

## Student Samples

Sample Storyboard (.docx file)

<https://youtu.be/VtNTfPQh8V4>

## 5. Jeopardy Game

Links will not work in Edit mode. To access materials, either

- click “Preview Changes” option on right side of page, and links will work on that page
- OR, highlight the link you want to access and click on the “chain” icon in the toolbar. Copy and paste the link in a new browser window.

Jeopardy Game PowerPoint (.pptx file)

## 6. Annotation Assignments

For all Annotation assignments, refer to the How to Write an Annotation page.

A sample rubric is included at the bottom of this page, beneath the prompts.

### **Narration**

After reviewing the module texts, “*Shooting an Elephant*,” by George Orwell and “*Sixty-nine Cents*,” by Gary Shteyngart, cite and comment on a minimum of FIVE (5) phrases, sentences or passages from either essay.

### **Illustration/Example**

After reviewing the essays, “*She’s Your Basic L.O.L. in N.A.D.*” by Perri Klass, and “*April & Paris*,” by David Sedaris, cite and comment on a minimum of FIVE (5) phrases, sentences or passages from either essay.

### **Compare/Contrast**

After reviewing the module texts, “*Disability*,” by Nancy Mairs, and “*Friending, Ancient or Otherwise*,” by Alex Wright, cite and comment

on a minimum of FIVE (5) phrases, sentences or passages from either essay.

## Cause and Effect

After reviewing the essays, “*Cultural Baggage*,” by Barbara Ehrenreich and “*Women in Science*,” by K.C. Cole, cite and comment on a minimum of FIVE (5) phrases, sentences or passages from either essay.

## Argument

After reviewing the essays, “*The Case Against Torture*,” by Alisa Soloman, and “*The Case for Torture*,” by Michael Levin, cite and comment on a minimum of FIVE (5) phrases, sentences or passages from either essay.

## Grading Rubric: Annotation Reading

---

### Criteria

Student chooses a text to annotate.

Student annotates the text citing a minimum of 5 phrases, sentences, or passages as instructed on the "Annotation" page.

Student submits the assignment on time.

---

# 7. Media Annotation Assignments

## Annotation and Media Research: Changing Education Paradigms

As you watch the following media, cite and comment on a minimum of THREE (3) statements, or facts, or examples, or research or any combination of those from the notes you take. Then research a topic related to the video, choose a source, and create a summary of the source.

### *Directions:*

1. Review the grading rubric as listed on this page.
2. Review the following video and create an annotation of the video. Refer to “How To Write An Annotation” with attention to the media section.

RSA Animate: *Changing Education Paradigms*



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online

here: <https://library.achievetheiream.org/herkimereenhancedwriting/?p=25#oembed-1>



3. Go to the Library and/or the Internet and research anything you want related to the assigned media's topic.

4. Choose a source that interests you and read it.

5. Write a summary of the research source. Create your summary as instructed in the "How To Write A Summary" page.

6. Include after your summary the source information, such as: full name of author, title, subtitle, publication date, and access information (such as the URL and date you accessed the page).

7. Save your work and name it with your last name, first initial, underscore, and Research, example: SmithR\_Research

8. Submit your assignment.

## Annotation and Media Research – Why Not Eat Insects?

As you watch the following media, cite and comment on a minimum of THREE (3) statements, or facts, or examples, or research or any combination of those from the notes you take. Then research a topic related to the video, choose a source, and create a summary of the source.

### **Directions:**

1. Review the grading rubric as listed on this page.

2. Review the following video and create an annotation of the video. Refer to "How To Write An Annotation" with attention to the media section.

Marcel Dicke: *Why Not Eat Insects?*



*One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online*

here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=25#oembed-2>

3. Go to the Library and/or the Internet and research anything you want related to the assigned media's topic.
4. Choose a source that interests you and read it.
5. Write a summary of the research source. Create your summary as instructed in the "How To Write A Summary" page.
6. Include after your summary the source information, such as: full name of author, title, subtitle, publication date, and access information (such as the URL and date you accessed the page).
7. Save your work and name it with your last name, first initial, underscore, and InsectsResearch, example: SmithR\_InsectsResearch
8. Submit your assignment.

## Annotation and Media Research – The Global Food Waste Scandal

As you watch the following media, cite and comment on a minimum of THREE (3) statements, or facts, or examples, or research or any combination of those from the notes you take. Then research a topic related to the video, choose a source, and create a summary of the source.

### **Directions:**

1. Review the grading rubric as listed on this page.
2. Review the following video and create an annotation of the

video. Refer to “How To Write An Annotation” with attention to the media section.

Tristram Stuart: *The Global Food Waste Scandal*



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online

here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=25#oembed-3>

3. Go to the Library and/or the Internet and research anything you want related to the assigned media's topic.

4. Choose a source that interests you and read it.

5. Write a summary of the research source. Create your summary as instructed in the “How To Write A Summary” page.

6. Include after your summary the source information, such as: full name of author, title, subtitle, publication date, and access information (such as the URL and date you accessed the page).

7. Save your work and name it with your last name, first initial, underscore, and FoodWasteResearch, example: SmithR\_FoodWasteResearch

8. Submit your assignment.

## Annotation and Media Research – Language as a Window to Human Nature

As you watch the following media, cite and comment on a minimum of THREE (3) statements, or facts, or examples, or research or any combination of those from the notes you take. Then research a

topic related to the video, choose a source, and create a summary of the source.

**Directions:**

1. Review the grading rubric as listed on this page.
2. Review the following video and create an annotation of the video. Refer to “How To Write An Annotation” with attention to the media section.

RSA Animate: *Language as a Window into Human Nature*



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online

here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=25#oembed-4>

3. Go to the Library and/or the Internet and research anything you want related to the assigned media's topic.
4. Choose a source that interests you and read it.
5. Write a summary of the research source. Create your summary as instructed in the “How To Write A Summary” page.
6. Include after your summary the source information, such as: full name of author, title, subtitle, publication date, and access information (such as the URL and date you accessed the page).
7. Save your work and name it with your last name, first initial, underscore, and LanguageResearch, example: SmithR\_LanguageResearch
8. Submit your assignment.

# Grading Rubric: Annotation and Media Research

Criteria
Student annotates the media by citing and commenting on a minimum of 3 statements, fact combination found in the video.
Student creates a summary in paragraph form of the research source of their choice.
Student submits annotation of media and summary of research on time.

## 8. Summary Assignments

For all Summary assignments, refer to the How to Write a Summary page.

A sample rubric is included at the bottom of this page, beneath the prompts.

### **Narration**

After reviewing the texts, “*Shooting an Elephant*,” by George Orwell and “*Sixty-nine Cents*,” by Gary Shteyngart, included in this module, choose one and create a summary of the source essay.

Include after your summary the source essay information, such as: full name of author, title, subtitle, publication date, and access information (such as the URL and date you accessed the page).

### **Illustration/Example**

After reviewing the texts, “*She’s Your Basic L.O.L. in N.A.D.*,” by Perri Klass, and “*April & Paris*,” by David Sedaris, included in this module, choose one and create a summary of the source essay you select.

Include after your summary the source information, such as: full name of author, title, subtitle, publication date, and access information (such as the URL and date you accessed the page).

## Compare/Contrast

After reviewing the texts, “Disability,” by Nancy Mairs, and “Friending, Ancient or Otherwise,” by Alex Wright, included in this module, choose one and create a summary of the source essay you select.

Include after your summary the source information, such as: full name of author, title, subtitle, publication date, and access information (such as the URL and date you accessed the page).

## Cause and Effect

After reviewing the essays included in this module, “Cultural Baggage,” by Barbara Ehrenreich and “Women in Science,” by K.C. Cole, choose one and create a summary of the source essay you select.

Include after your summary the source information, such as: full name of author, title, subtitle, publication date, and access information (such as the URL and date you accessed the page).

## Argument

After reviewing the texts referenced in this module, “The Case Against Torture,” by Alisa Solomon and “The Case for Torture,” by Michael Levin, paraphrase one of these source essays according to instructions in the page, “How to Write a Summary by Paraphrasing Source Material.”

Include after your summary the source information, such as: full

name of author, title, subtitle, publication date, and access information (such as the URL and date you accessed the page).

## Grading Rubric: Paraphrase Summary

Criteria
Student writes paraphrase in form of paragraph.
Student includes introductory sentence with text title, author, and main point.
Student writes paraphrase in their own words without their opinions.
Student includes 3 paraphrased passages from the text to support main point.
Student correctly cites passages using quotes and paragraph number from text.
Student includes a last sentence that “wraps up” the paraphrase (often restating the main point).
Student includes source information (full name of author, title, subtitle, publication date, access information).
Student submits the assignment on time.



# 9. Writing Process Essay Materials

For this assignment, you will demonstrate and submit a prewriting in the style of your choice and a draft about your writing process.

**Directions:**

1. Review Brainstorming

Brainstorming is a technique of listing as many ideas as possible about your writing topic. The greatest rule of brainstorming is to keep the process as broad and open as possible. This video suggests several things that you DON'T want to do.



*One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=27#oembed-1>*

2. Review Mindmapping

Mindmapping is similar to brainstorming, but it is much more visual. It allows you to create connections between ideas. It can be a useful step after brainstorming, or it may match your style better if brainstorming seems too random. This video provides a good overview:



*One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online*

here: [https://library.achievingthedream.org/  
herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=27#oembed-2](https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=27#oembed-2)

### 3. Review Freewriting

Freewriting is a process of simply writing. It helps you get started and can expand your thinking. Watch this video to learn more about this technique:



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: [https://library.achievingthedream.org/  
herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=27#oembed-3](https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=27#oembed-3)

4. Choose one of the prewriting techniques (Brainstorming, Mindmapping, Freewriting, or something else?) that best fits your style.

### 5. Review the writing prompt:

#### My Writing Process

*After reviewing Defining The Writing Process, how would you describe your writing process? What are your strengths and weaknesses as a writer? What works for you to get started with writing? Have you ever experienced writer's block? What did you do? Think about your impressions of Hale and Lamott's writing processes. What new information did you learn from Hale and Lamott that you can apply to your writing process? What are your goals for the term as we study and work to improve your writing?*

6. Create a prewriting in the style of your choice for the prompt.

7. Develop a draft according to the following:

- 2-3 typed, double-spaced pages (between 400-600 words)
- submitted as either a .doc, .docx, .rtf file

\*Papers submitted that do not meet the requirements will be returned to you ungraded.

8. Submit your prewriting and draft as a single file upload.

\*If you developed your prewriting by hand on paper, scan or take a picture of your prewriting, load the image onto your computer, and then insert the image on a separate page after your draft.

# 10. Definition Essay Materials

## Essay #1: Definition

Length: 2 pages, double-spaced

### **Introduction**

In our academic lives, we are exposed to new words and terms all the time: We might learn new terms—or more complicated applications of words we thought we already know—as we study history, biology, literature, or other disciplines. This happens in our everyday lives as well; we hear new words from different cultures, different technologies, and different generations. Often, when we want to know a word or a term's definition, we think of looking in the dictionary, of going to an acknowledged, credible source to find out what a word means. We don't necessarily think of definitions as debatable, as arguments, and many words, in many situations, are not. When you hear someone tell a teenager or young adult to act like an "adult," you probably don't think of that person acting like a 14-year-old. You know what the word "adult" means! But you also probably know that in a different context that word that you know so well may be contested. In criminal law, for example, a 14-year-old might be tried as an "adult" in a court if he or she has committed certain crimes. And 200 years ago, a 14-year-old was very much an adult in terms of being able to work or even marry. And in some parts of the world, that is still the case.

So once we think about it, we realize that dictionaries aren't the only sources of definitions. Often how a word is defined is very debatable; often, indeed, it's the foundation of an argument. For example, before a court can decide to try a 14-year-old as an adult, there must be agreement on what being an adult means in this particular legal term (that is, in terms of behavior, knowing right from wrong, etc.). How a court defines "adult" will likely be very

different from the way a biologist defines “adult”, which will vary still from the way a psychologist defines it.

In college and the professional world, you will often be expected to memorize established definitions of terms. But you will often need to be able to understand and enter the debate over definitions that are contested. In this expository essay, you will define an abstract term that may be contested.

### **Overview of assignment**

For this paper, you will choose a debatable term that is of interest to you. You will define the term using whatever evidence you determine to be the most compelling and uniquely describe the term you are defining. Make sure that the definition is your own and that it is not simply a different meaning of a word with multiple interpretations.

### **Purpose**

Your broader purpose here is to enter into a more expansive conversation about your term, but you must still shape — and make clear to your audience — your more specific purpose. Your goal in this paper is to reflect on and articulate the meaning of a word or term that has some resonance for you. For your reader, the paper should offer a clear sense of what you think the term means, how your thoughts connect to what others think of the term, why and in what context the definition matters.

How you arrange your essay is your choice, but you will want to consider where to place your support. How will you weave together a definition of an abstract term with an attention-grabbing narrative, examples, negation, and other tactics of definition that best explain the concept?

### **How to Proceed**

Once you have decided on your audience, your term, and the support for defining that term, how do you go about actually composing a definition? There are many **tactics of definition, or definition questions**, and we will consider and practice them in class. You will not use all of them in this paper (that would be more

like a list than a well-structured essay!), but you should choose the ones that work best for this term and audience.

What you should not do in this essay is define something the way we already know it; in other words, try not to tell us that a computer is a machine for accessing the World Wide Web and Word processing. We don't need to read that compromise is finding an in-between in a conflict. Aim for something invigorating and fresh. Make it exigent.

### **Examples**

Many of the authors we read in class attempt to define complex terms. These writers employed many of the strategies that you will be using to write your paper, so please use these stories as examples of how to successfully write a paper within the definition genre.

## II. Narrative Essay Materials

### Narrative Essay Prompt

Choose one of the following topics to write your own narrative essay. The topic you decide on should be something you care about, and the narration should be a means of communicating an **idea** that ties to the essay's theme. Remember in this essay, the narration is not an end in itself.

#### **FRIENDS**

1. Gaining independence
2. A friend's sacrifice
3. A significant trip with your family
4. A wedding or a funeral
5. A incident from family legend

#### **THE WORLD AROUND YOU**

1. A storm, a flood, an earthquake, or another natural event
2. A school event
3. The most important minutes of a sporting event

#### **LESSONS OF DAILY LIFE**

1. A time you confronted authority
2. A time you had to deliver bad news
3. Your biggest social blunder

#### **FIRSTS**

1. Your first day of school
2. The first performance you gave

3. A first date

## Writing Your Narrative Essay

To get started writing your essay:

1. Review “What is an Essay?”
2. Take time to review possible subjects
3. Use prewriting to help you narrow your topic to one experience.

Remember that “story starters” are everywhere. Think about it—status updates on social media websites can be a good place to start. You may have already started a “note” on Facebook, and now is your chance to develop that idea into a full narrative. If you keep a journal or diary, a simple event may unfold into a narrative. Simply said, your stories may be closer than you think!

When drafting your essay:

1. Develop an enticing title – although don’t let yourself get stuck on the title. A great title might suggest itself after you’ve begun the prewriting and drafting processes.
2. Use the introduction to establish the situation the essay will address.
3. Avoid addressing the assignment directly. (For example, don’t write “I am going to write about my most significant experience,” because this takes the fun out of reading the work!)
4. Think of things said at the moment this experience started for you—perhaps use a quote, or an interesting part of the experience that will grab the reader.
5. Let the story reflect your own voice. (Is your voice serious? Humorous? Matter-of-fact?)



6. Organize the essay in a way that
  - Establishes the situation [*introduction*];
  - Introduces the complication(s) [*body*]; and
  - States the lesson you learned [*conclusion*]
7. To avoid just telling what happens, make sure your essay takes time to reflect on why this experience is significant.

## Prewriting and Draft

For this assignment, you will work through the prewriting and drafting stages of your writing process in a narrative essay.

### **Directions:**

1. Review the grading rubric as listed on this page.
2. Choose a writing prompt on the “Narrative Essay Assignment: Writing Prompt” page.
3. Create a prewriting in the style of your choice for the prompt. Review the prewriting videos on the “My Writing Process: Prewriting and Draft” page if needed.
4. Develop a draft essay according to the following formatting guidelines: (Papers submitted that do not meet these formatting requirements will be returned to you ungraded.)
  1. Minimum of 3 typed, double-spaced pages (about 600-750 words), Times New Roman, 12 pt font size
  2. MLA formatting (see the “Formatting Style for Papers” page as needed)
  3. Submitted as either a .Microsoft Word doc, .rtf file
5. Submit your prewriting and draft as a single file upload.

Be sure to:

- Decide on something you care about so that the narration is a means of communicating an **idea**.
- Include *characters, conflict, sensory details*.
- Create a *sequence of events* in a *plot*.
- Develop an enticing title.
- Use the introduction to pull the reader into your singular experience.
- Avoid addressing the assignment directly. (don't write "I am going to write about..." – this takes the fun out of reading the work!)
- Let the essay reflect your own voice (Is your voice serious? Humorous? Matter-of-fact?)
- Avoid telling just what happens by making sure your essay reflects on why this experience is significant.

\*If you developed your prewriting by hand on paper, scan or take a picture of your prewriting, load the image onto your computer, and then insert the image on a separate page after your draft.

## Grading Rubric: Narrative Essay Prewriting and Draft

Criteria	Ratings
Presentation	2 pts: Paper is double-spaced throughout using Times New Roman 12 pt font. Time of class, date, and description of assignment are in upper-left-hand corner (no numbers) as well. Title should not be bolded or underlined. 0 pts: Essay is not consistent with presentation guidelines above.
Title	1 pts: The title is three or more words and hints at the essay's main point. 0 pts: No marks
Introduction	10 pts: Introduction sets up the problem the author struggles with. This sets the stage for the rest of the essay. 0 pts: No marks
Essay body	10 pts: The body presents the "complication" that sets the plot in motion. 0 pts: No marks
Transformation	10 pts: Conclusion shows the transformation from the introduction and body. 0 pts: No marks
Audience	2 pts: The "moral" of the story is objective and reflects a universal lesson. 0 pts: No marks
Show, don't tell	5 pts: Author "shows" the events with vivid and compelling language rather than telling. 3 pts: Some showing, mostly telling. 0 pts: No marks
Prewriting and brainstorming	10 pts: Shows good exploration and effort. 2 pts: Did some brainstorming. 0 pts: No marks

## Writing Community Review

For this assignment, you will need to share your Narrative Essay draft with your writing community via the discussion. Then you will

choose a peer's essay from your writing community and conduct a review.

**Directions:**

1. Review the grading rubric for this assignment as listed on this page (see below).

To post your Narrative Essay draft to the discussion:

1. Copy and paste your draft in a new Google Doc. If you aren't familiar with Google Docs, try this resource by Google to assist you.
2. Title the Google Doc with your first initial, last name, and Narrative Essay, ex. "RSmith Narrative Essay."
3. Set the share and edit permissions of the Google Doc to "Anyone with the link."
4. Copy and paste the URL address of the Google Doc into a new discussion post.

To review a peer's Narrative Essay in your writing community:

1. Select the URL address of the peer's essay from the discussion you want to review.
2. Develop your response to your peer's writing by focusing on each of these points:
  - What makes the essay memorable? What did you like best?
  - What is the meaning of the story? Why was the experience important to the audience?
  - How did the writer structure the essay? Is there a beginning (problem), a middle (complication), an end (transformation)?
  - What details may be missing and are needed for clarity? Is there something that the writer implies but does not actually carry out in the narrative?
  - Does the essay focus on one event only? Is the topic narrowed enough to support a well-focused essay?
  - What specific places in the essay did your peer succeed in

narrating a singular experience?

- Where might the essay need cuts, adds, or reorders?
- Using the 6+1 Traits Rubric, are there any weaknesses in the essay that stand out?
- Using the Dartmouth Writing Program “Attending to Grammar” link, do you recognize a grammar problem with the essay? If so, where?
- What other supportive suggestions can you identify to improve the writing?

3. Copy and paste your response at the end of the peer’s Narrative Essay in their Google Doc.

### *Grading Rubric: Narrative Essay – Writing Community Review*

---

**Criteria**

Student chooses a peer’s essay to review

Student addresses the meaning of the story

Student addresses essay structure

Student makes supportive suggestions for improving the essay

---

## Narrative Essay Final Draft

For this assignment, review the feedback posted from your writing community in the prior assignment: *Narrative Essay – Writing Community Review*. Work your way through the revising and proofreading stages of your writing process, and submit your final version of the essay.

### **Directions:**

1. Review the grading rubric as listed on this page.
2. Review the feedback posted on your Google Doc from the *Narrative Essay – Writing Community Review*.
3. Work through the revise stage of the writing process.
4. Work through the proofread stage of the writing process.
5. Create a final version of your Narrative Essay according to the following formatting guidelines\*:

- 3-4 typed, double-spaced pages (about 600-750 words), 12 pt font size, Times New Roman;
- MLA formatting (see the “Formatting Style for Papers” page as needed); and
- Submitted as either a .doc, .docx, .rtf file.

\*Papers submitted that do not meet these requirements will be returned to you ungraded.

6. Submit your final version of your Narrative Essay as a single file upload.

## Grading Rubric: Narrative Essay – Final Version

Criteria	Ratings
Presentation	8 pts: Paper is double-spaced throughout using Times New Roman 12 pt font. Time of class, date, and description of assignment are in upper-left-hand corner (no numbers) as well. Title should not be bolded or underlined. 0 pts: Essay is not consistent with presentation guidelines above.
Title	2 pts: The title is three or more words and hints at the essay's main point. 0 pts: No marks
Introduction	20 pts: Introduction sets up the problem the author struggles with. This sets the stage for the rest of the essay. 0 pts: No marks
Essay body	20 pts: The body presents the “complication” that sets the plot in motion. 0 pts: No marks
Transformation	20 pts: Conclusion shows the transformation from the introduction and body. 0 pts: No marks
Audience	10 pts: The “moral” of the story is objective and reflects a universal lesson. 0 pts: No marks
Show, don't tell	20 pts: Author “shows” the events with vivid and compelling language rather than telling. 12 pts: Some showing, mostly telling. 0 pts: No marks

## Reflection

Now that you have completed your Narrative Essay, take a few minutes to reflect on the experience and write about your process and what you learned. Write a reflection on your Narrative Essay writing experience using complete sentences.

### Directions:

1. Review the grading rubric as listed on this page.
2. Consider the following questions.

- What was most the challenging aspect of creating this essay?
- What did you learn about yourself as a writer?
- What might you do differently the next time you write this type of essay knowing what you know now after writing this essay?

3. Write your reflection on each question listed above, using complete sentences. Your final reflection assignment should fit the following guidelines:

- 1-1.5 typed, double-spaced pages, 12 pt font size, Times New Roman;
- Submitted as either a .doc, .docx, .rtf file.

4. Submit your reflections as a single file upload.

### *Grading Rubric: Narrative Essay – Reflection*

---

#### **Criteria**

Student writes a thoughtful response to each question using complete sentences.  
Assignment adheres to formatting guidelines.

---



# 12. Illustration/Example Essay Materials

## Illustration/Example Essay Prompt

Choose one of the following statements and agree or disagree with it in an essay developed by using multiple and extended examples. The statement you decide on should concern a topic you care about so that the examples are a means of communicating an **idea**; not an end in themselves.

### **FAMILY**

1. In happy families, talk is the main activity.
2. Grandparents relate more closely to grandchildren than to their children.
3. Sooner or later, children take on the personalities of their parents.

### **BEHAVIOR AND PERSONALITY**

1. Rudeness is on the rise.
2. Gestures and facial expressions often communicate what words cannot say.
3. Our natural surroundings when we are growing up contribute to our happiness or unhappiness as adults.

### **EDUCATION**

1. The best courses are the difficult ones.
2. Students at schools with enforced dress codes behave better than students at schools without such codes.

## **POLITICS AND SOCIAL ISSUES**

1. Drug and alcohol addiction does not happen just to “bad” people.

## **MEDIA AND CULTURE**

1. The Internet divides people instead of connecting them.
2. Good art can be ugly.
3. A craze or fad reveals something about the culture it arises in.
4. The best rock musicians treat social and political issues in their songs.

## **RULES FOR LIVING**

1. Lying may be justified by the circumstances.
2. Friends are people you can't always trust.

## Writing Your Illustration/Example Essay

To get started writing your essay:

1. Review “What Is an Essay?”
2. Take time to review possible subjects
3. Use prewriting to help you narrow your topic to one experience.

When drafting your essay:

1. Develop an enticing title.
2. Use the introduction to pull the reader into your singular experience by introducing the problematic situation.

3. Avoid addressing the assignment directly. (Don't write, "I am going to write about my most significant experience" – this takes the fun out of reading the work!)
4. Think of things said at the moment this experience started for you—perhaps use a quote, or an interesting part of the experience that will grab the reader.
5. Let the essay reflect your own voice. (Is your voice serious? Humorous? Matter-of-fact?)
6. Try to organize the essay in a way that may capture the reader by mixing multiple and extended examples, but don't string the reader along too much with "next, next, next."
7. To avoid just telling what happens. SHOW your reader what happened describing vivid examples and incorporating testimony. Make sure you take time to reflect on why this experience is significant.

## Prewriting and Draft

For this assignment, you will work through the prewriting and drafting stages of your writing process in an illustration/example essay.

### **Directions:**

1. Review the grading rubric as listed on this page.
2. Choose a writing prompt on the "Illustration/Example Essay Assignment: Writing Prompt" page.
3. Create a prewriting in the style of your choice for the prompt. Review the prewriting videos on the "My Writing Process: Prewriting and Draft" page if needed.
4. Develop a draft essay according to the following formatting guidelines\*:

- Minimum of 3 typed, double-spaced pages (about 600-750 words), Times New Roman, 12 pt font size
- MLA formatting (see the “Formatting Style for Papers” page as needed)
- Submitted as either a .Microsoft Word doc, .or rtf file

\*Papers submitted that do not meet these formatting requirements will be returned to you ungraded.

Be sure to:

- Agree or disagree with the prompt statement by using multiple and extended examples
- Decide on something you care about so that the narration is a means of communicating an **idea**
- Develop an enticing title
- Use the introduction to establish the situation the essay will address
- Avoid addressing the assignment directly. (Don’t write “I am going to write about...” – this takes the fun out of reading the work!)
- Let the essay reflect your own voice (Is your voice serious? Humorous? Matter-of-fact?)
- Avoid “telling” your reader about what happened. Instead, “show” what happens using active verbs and/or concrete and descriptive nouns.

5. Submit your prewriting and draft as a single file upload.

\*If you developed your prewriting by hand on paper, scan or take a picture of your prewriting, load the image onto your computer, and then insert the image on a separate page after your draft.

## Grading Rubric: Illustration/Example Essay Prewriting and Draft

Criteria	Ratings
Ideas	15 pts: The paper demonstrates outstanding idea development. 12 pts: The paper demonstrates above average idea development. 11 pts: The writer sufficiently defines the topic, even though the idea is not fully developed. 9 pts: The paper has an idea that needs to be developed. 0 pts: There is no coherent idea.
Content	15 pts: The paper demonstrates outstanding evidence of support for the main idea. 12 pts: The paper demonstrates above average evidence of support for the main idea. 11 pts: The paper demonstrates sufficient support of the main idea. 9 pts: The paper requires more supporting evidence of the main idea. 0 pts: There is little content supporting the main idea.
Organization	15 pts: The organization is outstanding and showcases the central idea. 13 pts: The organizational structure is above average. 10 pts: The organizational structure is strong enough to move the reader through the paper. 8 pts: The writing needs a clearer sense of direction. The ideas are not fully developed. 0 pts: The organization is poor.
Word Choice, Sentence Fluency, Conventions	5 pts: The writer demonstrates an outstanding word choice and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 3 pts: The writer demonstrates above average word choice and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 2 pts: The writer demonstrates sufficient selection of word choice and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 1 pts: The writer demonstrates a limited vocabulary and lacks word choice and grammar repeatedly distract the reader and make the writing difficult to read. 0 pts: No marks.

## Writing Community Review

For this assignment, you will need to share your Illustration/Example Essay draft with your writing community via the

discussion. Then you will choose a peer's essay from your writing community and conduct a review.

**Directions:**

1. View the grading rubric for this assignment as listed on this page (see below).

To post your Illustration/Example Essay draft to the discussion:

1. Copy and paste your draft in a new Google Doc. If you aren't familiar with Google Docs, try this resource by Google to assist you.
2. Title the Google Doc with your first initial, last name, and Illustration/Example Essay, example: RSmith Illustration Example Essay
3. Set the share and edit permissions of the Google Doc to "Anyone with the link."
4. Copy and paste the URL address of the Google Doc into a new discussion post.

To review a peer's Illustration/Example Essay in your writing community:

1. Select the URL address of the peer's essay from the discussion you want to review.
2. Develop your response to your peer's writing by focusing on each of these talking points:
  - What makes the essay memorable? What did you like best?
  - What is the meaning of the story? Why was the experience important to the writer?
  - How did the writer structure the essay? Is there a beginning, middle, and end?
  - What details may be missing and are needed for clarity? Is there something that the writer implies but does not actually carry out in the narrative?
  - Does the essay focus on one event only? Is the topic narrowed

enough?

- What specific places in the essay did your peer succeed in narrating a singular experience?
- Where might the essay need cuts, adds, or reorders?
- Using the 6+1 Traits Rubric, are there any weaknesses in the essay that stand out?
- Using the Dartmouth Writing Program “Attending to Grammar” link, do you recognize a grammar problem with the essay? If so, where?
- What other supportive suggestions can you identify to improve the writing?

3. Copy and paste your response at the end of the peer’s Illustration/Example Essay in their Google Doc.

## *Grading Rubric: Illustration/Example Essay – Writing Community Review*

---

### **Criteria**

Student shares their essay with the class via  
Google Doc URL posted in the discussion

Student chooses a peer's essay to review

Student addresses what makes the essay  
memorable

Student addresses the meaning of the story

Student addresses essay structure

Student addresses essay details to enhance clarity

Student addresses singular event of essay

Student addresses whether essay might need cuts,  
adds, reorders

Student applies 6+1 Writing Rubric and Grammar

Student makes supportive suggestions for  
improving the essay

---



## Illustration/Example Final Draft

For this assignment, review the feedback posted from your writing community in the prior assignment: *Illustration/Example Essay – Writing Community Review*. Work your way through the revising and proofreading stages of your writing process, and submit your final version of the essay.

### **Directions:**

1. Review the grading rubric as listed on this page.
2. Review the feedback posted on your Google Doc from the *Illustration/Example Essay – Writing Community Review*.
3. Work through the revise stage of the writing process.
4. Work through the proofread stage of the writing process.
5. Create a final version of your *Illustration/Example Essay* according to the following formatting guidelines\*:

- 3-4 typed, double-spaced pages (about 600-750 words), 12 pt font size, Times New Roman;
- MLA formatting (see the “Formatting Style for Papers” page as needed); and
- Submitted as either a .doc, .docx, .rtf file.

\*Papers submitted that do not meet these requirements will be returned to you ungraded.

6. Submit your final version of your *Illustration/Example Essay* as a single file upload.

Grading Rubric: Illustration/Example Essay – Final

Criteria	Ratings
Ideas	30 pts: The paper demonstrates outstanding idea development. 24 pts: The paper demonstrates above average idea development. 22 pts: The writer sufficiently defines the topic, even though the idea needs to be developed. 18 pts: The paper has an idea that needs to be developed. 0 pts: There is no coherent idea.
Content	30 pts: The paper demonstrates outstanding evidence of support. 24 pts: The paper demonstrates above average evidence of support. 22 pts: The paper demonstrates sufficient support of the main idea. 18 pts: The paper requires more supporting evidence of the main idea. 0 pts: There is little content supporting the main idea.
Organization	30 pts: The organization is outstanding and showcases the central idea. 26 pts: The organizational structure is above average. 20 pts: The organizational structure is strong enough to make the paper easy to read. 16 pts: The writing needs a clearer sense of direction. The ideas are not clearly connected. 0 pts: The organization is poor.
Word Choice, Sentence Fluency, Conventions	10 pts: The writer demonstrates an outstanding word choice and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 6 pts: The writer demonstrates above average word choice and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 4 pts: The writer demonstrates sufficient selection of words and errors of standard writing conventions. 2 pts: The writer demonstrates a limited vocabulary and language usage and grammar repeatedly distract the reader and make the writing difficult to read. 0 pts: No marks.

Reflection

Now that you have completed your Illustration/Example Essay, take a few minutes to reflect on the experience and write about your

process and what you learned. Write a reflection on your Illustration/Example Essay writing experience using complete sentences.

**Directions:**

1. Review the grading rubric as listed on this page.
2. Consider the following questions.
  - What was most the challenging aspect of creating this essay?
  - What did you learn about yourself as a writer?
  - What might you do differently the next time you write this type of essay knowing what you know now after writing this essay?
3. Write your reflection on each question listed above, using complete sentences. Your final reflection assignment should fit the following guidelines:
  - 1-1.5 typed, double-spaced pages, 12 pt font size, Times New Roman;
  - Submitted as either a .doc, .docx, .rtf file.
4. Submit your reflections as a single file upload.

### *Grading Rubric: Illustration/Example Essay – Reflection*

---

**Criteria**

Student writes a thoughtful response to each question using complete sentences.  
Assignment adheres to formatting guidelines.

---

# 13. Compare/Contrast Essay Materials

## Compare/Contrast Essay Prompt

Choose one of the following topics for an essay developed by comparison and contrast using three points of analysis. The topic you decide on should be something you care about so that the examples are a means of communicating an **idea**; not an end in themselves.

### **EXPERIENCE**

1. Two jobs you have held
2. A good and a bad job interview

### **PEOPLE**

1. Your relationship with two friends
2. Two relatives

### **PLACES AND THINGS**

1. A place as it is now and as it was years ago
2. Two towns or cities.
3. Nature in the city and in the country

### **EDUCATION**

1. A passive student and an active student

# Writing Your Compare/Contrast Essay

To get started writing your essay:

1. Review “What is an Essay?”
2. Take time to review possible subjects
3. Use prewriting to help you focus and narrow your topic.

Remember that “essay starters” are everywhere. If you keep a journal or diary, a simple event may unfold into an essay. Simply said, your essays may be closer than you think!

When drafting your essay:

1. Develop an enticing title
2. Use the introduction to pull the reader into your singular experience by setting up the problematic situation.
3. Think of specific, interesting details or events to incorporate into the essay to grab the reader.
4. Let the essay reflect your own voice (is your voice serious, humorous, matter-of-fact?)
5. Organize the essay in a way that may capture the reader, but don’t string the reader along too much with “next, next, next.”
6. To avoid just telling what happens, SHOW us what happened with vivid examples and/or testimony. Make sure you take time to reflect on why this experience is significant.

## Prewriting and Draft

For this assignment, you will work through the prewriting and drafting stages of your writing process in a compare/contrast essay.

### **Directions:**

1. Review the grading rubric as listed on this page.

2. Choose a writing prompt on the “Compare/Contrast Essay Assignment: Writing Prompt” page.

3. Create a prewriting in the style of your choice for the prompt. Review the prewriting videos on the “My Writing Process: Prewriting and Draft” page if needed.

4. Develop a draft essay according to the following formatting guidelines\*:

- Minimum of 3 typed, double-spaced pages (about 600-750 words), Times New Roman, 12 pt font size
- MLA formatting (see the “Formatting Style for Papers” page as needed)
- Submitted as either a .Microsoft Word doc, .or rtf file

\*Papers submitted that do not meet these formatting requirements will be returned to you ungraded.

Be sure to:

- Develop your essay by comparison and contrast using the three-points-of analysis scheme
- Decide on something you care about so that the narration is a means of communicating an **idea**
- Include *characters, conflict, sensory details* as appropriate to help your essay come alive
- Create a logical sequence for your points of comparison
- Develop an enticing title
- Use the introduction to establish the situation the essay will address
- Avoid addressing the assignment directly (don’t write “I am going to write about...” – this takes the fun out of reading the work!)
- Let the essay reflect your own voice (Is your voice serious? Humorous? Matter-of-fact?)
- Avoid “telling” your reader about what happened. Instead, “show” what happens using active verbs and/or concrete and

descriptive nouns and details.

- Make sure you take time to reflect on why your points are significant.

5. Submit your prewriting and draft as a single file upload.

\*If you developed your prewriting by hand on paper, scan or take a picture of your prewriting, load the image onto your computer, and then insert the image on a separate page after your draft.

### *Grading Rubric: Compare/Contrast Essay Prewriting and Draft*

Criteria	Ratings
Ideas	15 pts: The paper demonstrates outstanding idea development. 12 pts: The paper demonstrates above average idea development. 11 pts: The writer sufficiently defines the topic, even though it is complex. 9 pts: The paper has an idea that needs to be developed. 0 pts: There is no coherent idea.
Content	15 pts: The paper demonstrates outstanding evidence of support. 12 pts: The paper demonstrates above average evidence of support. 11 pts: The paper demonstrates sufficient support of the main idea. 9 pts: The paper requires more supporting evidence of the main idea. 0 pts: There is little content supporting the main idea.
Organization	15 pts: The organization is outstanding and showcases the central idea. 13 pts: The organizational structure is above average. 10 pts: The organizational structure is strong enough to move the reader through the paper. 8 pts: The writing needs a clearer sense of direction. The ideas are not clearly connected. 0 pts: The organization is poor.
Word Choice, Sentence Fluency, Conventions	5 pts: The writer demonstrates an outstanding word choice and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 3 pts: The writer demonstrates above average word choice and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 2 pts: The writer demonstrates sufficient selection of words and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 1 pts: The writer demonstrates a limited vocabulary and language usage and grammar repeatedly distract the reader and make the writing difficult to read. 0 pts: No marks.

## Writing Community Review

For this assignment, you will need to share your Compare/Contrast Essay draft with your writing community via the discussion. Then you will choose a peer's essay from your writing community and conduct a review.

### **Directions:**

1. View the grading rubric for this assignment as listed on this page (see below).

To post your Compare/Contrast Essay draft to the discussion:

1. Copy and paste your draft in a new Google Doc. If you aren't familiar with Google Docs, try this resource by Google to assist you.
2. Title the Google Doc with your first initial, last name, and Compare/Contrast Essay, example: RSmith Compare/Contrast Essay
3. Set the share and edit permissions of the Google Doc to "Anyone with the link."
4. Copy and paste the URL address of the Google Doc into a new discussion post.

To review a peer's Compare/Contrast Essay in your writing community:

1. Select the URL address of the peer's essay from the discussion you want to review.
2. Develop your response to your peer's writing by focusing on each of these talking points:
  - What makes the essay memorable? What did you like best?
  - What is the meaning of the story? Why was the experience



important to the writer?

- How did the writer structure the essay? Is there a beginning, middle, and end?
- What details may be missing and are needed for clarity? Is there something that the writer implies but does not actually carry out in the narrative?
- Is the focused at an appropriate level? Is the topic narrowed enough?
- What specific places in the essay did your peer succeed in describing a singular event or vivid, memorable details or experiences?
- Where might the essay need cuts, adds, or reorders?
- Using the 6+1 Traits Rubric, are there any weaknesses in the essay that stand out?
- Using the Dartmouth Writing Program “Attending to Grammar” link, do you recognize a grammar problem with the essay? If so, where?
- What other supportive suggestions can you identify to improve the writing?

3. Copy and paste your response at the end of the peer’s Compare/Contrast Essay in their Google Doc.

## *Grading Rubric: Compare/Contrast Essay – Writing Community Review*

---

### **Criteria**

Student shares their essay with the class via  
Google Doc URL posted in the discussion

Student chooses a peer's essay to review

Student addresses what makes the essay  
memorable

Student addresses the theme or meaning of the essay

Student addresses essay structure

Student addresses essay details to enhance clarity

Student addresses singular event or vivid details in essay

Student addresses whether essay might need cuts,  
adds, reorders

Student applies 6+1 Writing Rubric and Grammar

Student makes supportive suggestions for  
improving the essay

---

## Compare/Contrast Final Draft

For this assignment, review the feedback posted from your writing community in the prior assignment: *Compare/Contrast Essay – Writing Community Review*. Work your way through the revising and proofreading stages of your writing process, and submit your final version of the essay.

### **Directions:**

1. Review the grading rubric as listed on this page.
2. Review the feedback posted on your Google Doc from the *Compare/Contrast Essay – Writing Community Review*.
3. Work through the revise stage of the writing process.
4. Work through the proofread stage of the writing process.
5. Create a final version of your Compare/Contrast Essay according to the following:

- 3-4 typed, double-spaced pages (about 600-750 words), 12 pt font size, Times New Roman;
- MLA formatting (see the “Formatting Style for Papers” page as needed); and
- submitted as either a .doc, .docx, .rtf file.

\*Papers submitted that do not meet the requirements will be returned to you ungraded.

6. Submit your final version of your Compare/Contrast Essay as a single file upload.

## Grading Rubric: Compare/Contrast Essay – Final

Criteria	Ratings
Ideas	30 pts: The paper demonstrates outstanding idea development. 24 pts: The paper demonstrates above average idea development. 22 pts: The writer sufficiently defines the topic, even though it is not fully developed. 18 pts: The paper has an idea that needs to be developed. 0 pts: There is no coherent idea.
Content	30 pts: The paper demonstrates outstanding evidence of support. 24 pts: The paper demonstrates above average evidence of support. 22 pts: The paper demonstrates sufficient support of the main idea. 18 pts: The paper requires more supporting evidence of the main idea. 0 pts: There is little content supporting the main idea.
Organization	30 pts: The organization is outstanding and showcases the central idea. 26 pts: The organizational structure is above average. 20 pts: The organizational structure is strong enough to move the reader forward. 16 pts: The writing needs a clearer sense of direction. The ideas are not fully developed. 0 pts: The organization is poor.
Word Choice, Sentence Fluency, Conventions	10 pts: The writer demonstrates an outstanding word choice and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 6 pts: The writer demonstrates above average word choice and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 4 pts: The writer demonstrates sufficient selection of words and errors of standard writing conventions. 2 pts: The writer demonstrates a limited vocabulary and lacks usage and grammar repeatedly distract the reader and make the writing difficult to read. 0 pts: No marks.

## Reflection

Now that you have completed your Compare/Contrast Essay, take a few minutes to reflect on the experience and write about your

process and what you learned. Write a reflection on your Compare/Contrast Essay writing experience using complete sentences.

**Directions:**

1. Review the grading rubric as listed on this page.
2. Consider the following questions.
  - What was most the challenging aspect of creating this essay?
  - What did you learn about yourself as a writer?
  - What might you do differently the next time you write this type of essay knowing what you know now after writing this essay?
3. Write your reflection on each question listed above, using complete sentences. Your final reflection assignment should fit the following guidelines:
  - 1-1.5 typed, double-spaced pages, 12 pt font size, Times New Roman;
  - Submitted as either a .doc, .docx, .rtf file.
4. Submit your reflections as a single file upload.

### *Grading Rubric: Compare/Contrast Essay – Reflection*

---

**Criteria**

Student writes a thoughtful response to each question using complete sentences.  
Assignment adheres to formatting guidelines.

---

# 14. Cause and Effect Essay Materials

## Cause and Effect Essay Prompt

Choose one of the following questions, and answer it in an essay developed by analyzing causes or effects. The question you decide on should concern a topic you care about so that the examples are a means of communicating an **idea**; not an end in themselves.

### **PEOPLE AND THEIR BEHAVIOR**

1. Why did one couple you know marry or divorce?
2. Why is a particular friend or relative always getting into trouble?
3. Why do people root for the underdog?
4. How does a person's alcohol or drug dependency affect others in his or her family?

### **ART AND ENTERTAINMENT**

1. Why do teenagers like rock music?
2. Why is a particular television show so popular?

### **CONTEMPORARY ISSUES**

1. Why is a college education important?
2. Why do marriages between teenagers fail more often than marriages between people in other age groups?

### **EDUCATION**

1. The best courses are the difficult ones.

2. Students at schools with enforced dress codes behave better than students at schools without such codes.

### **POLITICS AND SOCIAL ISSUES**

1. Drug and alcohol addiction does not happen just to “bad” people.

### **MEDIA AND CULTURE**

1. The Internet divides people instead of connecting them.
2. Good art can be ugly.
3. A craze or fad reveals something about the culture it arises in.
4. The best rock musicians treat social and political issues in their songs.

### **RULES FOR LIVING**

1. Lying may be justified by the circumstances.
2. Friends are people you can't always trust.

## Writing Your Cause and Effect Essay

To get started writing your essay:

1. Review “What Is An Essay?”
2. Take time to review possible subjects.
3. Use prewriting to help you narrow your topic to an appropriate level of focus.

Remember that “story starters” are everywhere. Think about it—status updates on social media websites can be a good place to

start. You may have already started a “note” on Facebook, and now is your chance to develop that idea into a full narrative. If you keep a journal or diary, a simple event may unfold into a narrative. Simply said, your stories may be closer than you think!

When drafting your essay:

1. Develop an enticing title.
2. Use the introduction to pull the reader into your thesis with a singular experience.
3. Avoid addressing the assignment directly. (Don't write “I am going to write about the causes and effects of \_\_\_\_\_” – this takes the fun out of reading the work!)
4. Think of things said at the moment your perspective on the topic became clear. Perhaps use a quote, or an interesting part of the experience that will grab the reader.
5. Let the story reflect your own voice. Is your voice serious? Humorous? Matter-of-fact?
6. Organize the essay in a way that may capture the reader, but don't string the reader along too much with “next, next, next.”
7. To avoid just telling what happens, make sure you take time to show significant details and reflect on why topic – and your experience with it – is significant.

## Prewriting and Draft

For this assignment, you will work through the prewriting and drafting stages of your writing process in a cause and effect essay.

### **Directions:**

1. Review the grading rubric as listed on this page.
2. Choose the writing prompt on the “Cause And Effect Essay: Writing Prompt” page.
3. Create a prewriting in the style of your choice for the prompt.



Review the prewriting videos on the “My Writing Process: Prewriting and Draft” page if needed.

4. Develop a draft according to the following:

- Minimum of 3 typed, double-spaced pages (about 600-750 words), Times New Roman, 12 pt font size
- MLA formatting (see the “Formatting Style for Papers” page as needed)
- Submitted as either a .doc, .docx, .rtf file

\*Papers submitted that do not meet the requirements will be returned to you ungraded.

Be sure to:

- Develop an essay developed by analyzing causes or effects or the prompt
- Decide on something you care about so that the narration is a means of communicating an **idea**
- Include *characters, conflict, sensory details* as appropriate to help your essay come alive
- Create a *sequence of events* in a plot to support the logical flow of your essay
- Develop an enticing title
- Use the introduction to pull the reader into your singular experience
- Avoid addressing the assignment directly (Don’t write “I am going to write about...” – this takes the fun out of reading the work!)
- Let the essay reflect your own voice (Is your voice serious? Humorous? Matter-of-fact?)
- Avoid “telling” your reader about what happened. Instead, “show” what happens using active verbs and/or concrete and descriptive nouns and details.

5. Submit your prewriting and draft as a single file upload.

\*If you developed your prewriting by hand on paper, scan or take a picture of your prewriting, load the image onto your computer, and then insert the image on a separate page after your draft.

*Grading Rubric: Cause and Effect Essay Prewriting and Draft*

Criteria	Ratings
Ideas	15 pts: The paper demonstrates outstanding idea development. 12 pts: The paper demonstrates above average idea development. 11 pts: The writer sufficiently defines the topic, even though the idea is not fully developed. 9 pts: The paper has an idea that needs to be developed. 0 pts: There is no coherent idea.
Content	15 pts: The paper demonstrates outstanding evidence of support. 12 pts: The paper demonstrates above average evidence of support. 11 pts: The paper demonstrates sufficient support of the main idea. 9 pts: The paper requires more supporting evidence of the main idea. 0 pts: There is little content supporting the main idea.
Organization	15 pts: The organization is outstanding and showcases the central idea. 13 pts: The organizational structure is above average. 10 pts: The organizational structure is strong enough to move the reader through the paper. 8 pts: The writing needs a clearer sense of direction. The ideas are not fully developed. 0 pts: The organization is poor.
Word Choice, Sentence Fluency, Conventions	5 pts: The writer demonstrates an outstanding word choice and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 3 pts: The writer demonstrates above average word choice and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 2 pts: The writer demonstrates sufficient selection of words and errors of standard writing conventions. 1 pts: The writer demonstrates a limited vocabulary and language usage and grammar repeatedly distract the reader and make the writing difficult to read. 0 pts: No marks.

## Writing Community Review

For this assignment, you will need to share your Cause and Effect Essay draft with your writing community via the discussion. Then you will choose a peer's essay from your writing community and conduct a review.

### **Directions:**

1. View the grading rubric for this assignment as listed on this page (see below).

To post your Cause and Effect Essay draft to the discussion:

1. Copy and paste your draft in a new Google Doc. If you aren't familiar with Google Docs, try this resource by Google to assist you.
2. Title the Google Doc with your first initial, last name, and Cause Effect Essay, example: RSmith Cause Effect Essay
3. Set the share and edit permissions of the Google Doc to "Anyone with the link."
4. Copy and paste the URL address of the Google Doc into a new discussion post.

To review a peer's Cause and Effect Essay in your writing community:

1. Select the URL address of the peer's essay from the discussion you want to review.
2. Develop your response to your peer's writing by focusing on each of these talking points:
  - What makes the essay memorable? What did you like best?
  - What is the meaning of the story? Why was the experience important to the writer?
  - How did the writer structure the essay? Is there a beginning, middle, and end?
  - What details may be missing and are needed for clarity? Is

there something that the writer implies but does not actually carry out in the narrative?

- Is the essay focused at an appropriate level? Is the topic narrowed enough?
- What specific places in the essay did your peer succeed in describing a singular event or vivid, memorable details or experiences?
- Where might the essay need cuts, adds, or reorders?
- Using the 6+1 Traits Rubric, are there any weaknesses in the essay that stand out?
- Using the Dartmouth Writing Program “Attending to Grammar” link, do you recognize a grammar problem with the essay? If so, where?
- What other supportive suggestions can you identify to improve the writing?

3. Copy and paste your response at the end of the peer’s Cause and Effect Essay in their Google Doc.

## *Grading Rubric: Cause and Effect Essay – Writing Community Review*

---

### **Criteria**

Student shares their essay with the class via  
Google Doc URL posted in the discussion

Student chooses a peer's essay to review

Student addresses what makes the essay  
memorable

Student addresses the theme or meaning of the essay

Student addresses essay structure

Student addresses essay details to enhance clarity

Student addresses singular event or vivid details in essay

Student addresses whether essay might need cuts,  
adds, reorders

Student applies 6+1 Writing Rubric and Grammar

Student makes supportive suggestions for  
improving the essay

---

## Cause and Effect Final Draft

For this assignment, review the feedback posted from your writing community in the prior assignment: *Cause and Effect Essay – Writing Community Review*. Work your way through the revising and proofreading stages of your writing process, and submit your final version.

### **Directions:**

1. Review the grading rubric as listed on this page.
2. Review the feedback posted on your Google Doc from the *Cause and Effect Essay – Writing Community Review*.
3. Work through the revise stage of the writing process.
4. Work through the proofread stage of the writing process.
5. Create a final version of your Cause and Effect Essay according to the following:

- 3-4 typed, double-spaced pages (about 600-750 words), 12 pt font size, Times New Roman;
- MLA formatting (see the “Formatting Style for Papers” page as needed); and
- Submitted as either a .doc, .docx, .rtf file.

\*Papers submitted that do not meet the requirements will be returned to you ungraded.

6. Submit your final version of your Cause and Effect Essay as a single file upload.

## Grading Rubric: Cause and Effect Essay – Final

Criteria	Ratings
Ideas	30 pts: The paper demonstrates outstanding idea development. 24 pts: The paper demonstrates above average idea development. 22 pts: The writer sufficiently defines the topic, even though the idea needs to be developed. 18 pts: The paper has an idea that needs to be developed. 0 pts: There is no coherent idea.
Content	30 pts: The paper demonstrates outstanding evidence of support. 24 pts: The paper demonstrates above average evidence of support. 22 pts: The paper demonstrates sufficient support of the main idea. 18 pts: The paper requires more supporting evidence of the main idea. 0 pts: There is little content supporting the main idea.
Organization	30 pts: The organization is outstanding and showcases the central idea. 26 pts: The organizational structure is above average. 20 pts: The organizational structure is strong enough to make the paper easy to read. 16 pts: The writing needs a clearer sense of direction. The ideas are not clearly connected. 0 pts: The organization is poor.
Word Choice, Sentence Fluency, Conventions	10 pts: The writer demonstrates an outstanding word choice and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 6 pts: The writer demonstrates above average word choice and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 4 pts: The writer demonstrates sufficient selection of words and errors of standard writing conventions. 2 pts: The writer demonstrates a limited vocabulary and language usage and grammar repeatedly distract the reader and make the writing difficult to read. 0 pts: No marks.

## Reflection

Now that you have completed your Cause and Effect Essay, take a few minutes to reflect on the experience and write about your

process and what you learned. Write a reflection on your Cause and Effect Essay writing experience using complete sentences.

**Directions:**

1. Review the grading rubric as listed on this page.
2. Consider the following questions.
  - What was most the challenging aspect of creating this essay?
  - What did you learn about yourself as a writer?
  - What might you do differently the next time you write this type of essay knowing what you know now after writing this essay?
3. Write your reflection on each question listed above, using complete sentences. Your final reflection assignment should fit the following guidelines:
  - 1-1.5 typed, double-spaced pages, 12 pt font size, Times New Roman;
  - Submitted as either a .doc, .docx, .rtf file.
4. Submit your reflections as a single file upload.

### *Grading Rubric: Cause and Effect Essay – Reflection*

---

**Criteria**

Student writes a thoughtful response to each question using complete sentences.  
Assignment adheres to formatting guidelines.

---



# 15. Argument Essay Materials

## Argument Essay Prompt

In this assignment choose a specific issue in which two credible parties have documented the following:

- Clearly opposing positions, and
- Clear agendas.

Choose the position you agree with and argue that position using:

- Three separate lines of reasoning to support your position
- Research to support each line of reasoning (example, testimony, and fact/data, or any combination) that supports your position
- Research about the opposing position's views
- Presentation of the opposing views, along with lines of reasoning to refute them

## Essay Requirements

This assignment requires an “issue statement” (refer to the ANNOTATED Student Sample for further explanation about issue statements).

This assignment requires a two-part thesis:

- Statement of position; and
- Forecast (essentially a “preview”) of your lines of reasoning

The assignment also requires:

- A minimum of three credible outside sources formatted on a source page (MLA, Works Cited)
- MLA citation style for the paper
- Minimum of four (4) FULL pages not including the Works Cited page

## Writing Tip #1

This Argument Essay is a Classical Argument Essay aimed at both arguing the author's thesis and refuting the opponent's thesis. It is NOT a Persuasive Essay, where the purpose is to persuade without necessarily arguing against an opposing perspective. The difference is that an argument essay tries both to persuade and refute against an opposing view.

With this in mind, you should not choose a generic issue that has no credible opposing view – like “energy conservation” – for a Classical Argument essay. One can try to write a persuasive essay that makes an appeal to a reader to conserve energy. But unless you can find a credible opponent with an active agenda opposing your appeal (“We should NOT conserve energy”), then you cannot write a Classical Argument essay.

## Writing Tip #2

It can be helpful to look into current legislation under debate everywhere from your city council, state legislature or even at the federal level. But be careful with large issues. Students often like to take them on, but they can be too unwieldy for a short assignment like this.

# Writing Your Argument Essay

To get started writing your essay:

1. Review “What Is An Essay?”
2. Take time to review possible subjects.
3. Use prewriting to help you narrow your topic.

Remember that “story starters” are everywhere. Think about issues that come up in status updates or “likes” on social media. What issues are being debated in student forums on your campus? What are the headlines in the college paper? Your local television news or newspaper website? Your topic may be closer than you think!

## Outline

**ATTENTION: For this assignment you are not required to write a complete draft of your Argument Essay. Instead, you are to select a topic for your Argument Essay and write a detailed outline of your essay based on the model below.**

# Argument Essay Outline

---

1) Issue statement

2) Two-part thesis (assertion plus forecast)

3) Opponent's first claim

- One sentence summary of opponent's source support

4) Opponent's second claim

- One sentence summary of opponent's source support

5) Your first claim with "keyword"

- One sentence summary of your source support #1
- One sentence summary of your source support #2

6) Your second claim with "keyword"

- One sentence summary of your source support #1
- One sentence summary of your source support #2

7) Your third claim with "keyword"

- One sentence summary of your source support #1
- One sentence summary of your source support #2

8) Conclusion: Summation of arguments and why should we care? What's at stake?

---

**Please Note:** a "one sentence summary" is the same thing as the first sentence in a normal summary, i.e., author, title, source, and "main point" of the source.

Papers submitted that do not meet the requirements will be returned to you ungraded.

# Assignment Checklist

Be sure to:

- Choose a specific issue in which two credible parties have documented clearly opposing positions and clear agendas
- Choose the position you agree with and argue that position using the following:
  - Three separate lines of reasoning;
  - Each line of reasoning will support your position with research (example, testimony, and fact/data, or any combination) that supports your position; and
  - Research about the opposing position's views
  - Present the opposing views and refute them.
- Include a two-part thesis with:
  - Statement of position; and
  - Forecast of your lines of reasoning
- Develop an enticing title that implies your position.
- Use a sympathetic appeal and/or cited research in the introduction to establish the issue.
- Avoid addressing the assignment directly. (Don't write "I am going to argue about..." Instead, introduce the issue in a more compelling way that makes the reader care.)
- Your voice should be professional and scholarly.
- Package your source material with appropriate signaling and commentary.

5. Submit your detailed outline as a single file upload.

Grading Rubric: Argument Essay Outline

Criteria	Ratings
Ideas	15 pts: The outline demonstrates outstanding idea development. 12 pts: The outline demonstrates above average idea development. 11 pts: The writer sufficiently defines the topic, even though the outline is not fully developed. 9 pts: The outline has an idea that needs to be developed. 0 pts: There is no coherent idea.
Content	15 pts: The outline demonstrates outstanding evidence of support. 12 pts: The outline demonstrates above average evidence of support. 11 pts: The outline demonstrates sufficient support of the main idea. 9 pts: The outline requires more supporting evidence of the main idea. 0 pts: There is little content supporting the main idea.
Organization	15 pts: The organization is outstanding and showcases the central idea. 13 pts: The organizational structure is above average. 10 pts: The organizational structure is strong enough to move the reader forward. 8 pts: The writing needs a clearer sense of direction. The introduction and conclusion are weak. 0 pts: The organization is poor.
Word Choice, Sentence Fluency, Conventions	5 pts: The writer demonstrates an outstanding word choice and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 3 pts: The writer demonstrates above average word choice and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 2 pts: The writer demonstrates sufficient selection of words and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 1 pts: The writer demonstrates a limited vocabulary and lacks usage and grammar repeatedly distract the reader and make the writing difficult to read. 0 pts: No marks.

Draft

For this assignment, you will work through the drafting stage of your writing process in an argument essay.

Directions:

1. Review the grading rubric as listed on this page.
2. Review the instructions and writing tips on the “Argument Essay: Writing Prompt” page.
3. Review the Argument Essay Outline you submitted along with feedback you received from that assignment. Make adjustments to the outline in accordance with the feedback. This may include strengthening lines of reasoning, expanding or improving research sources for supporting evidence, creating a more sympathetic introduction to your position, etc.
4. Develop a complete draft of your essay using your improved Argument Essay Outline. It should meet the following requirements:

- A two-part thesis including statement of position; and forecast of your lines of reasoning
- A minimum of three credible outside sources formatted on a source page (MLA, Works Cited)
- MLA citation style for the paper
- Minimum of four (4) FULL pages not including the Works Cited page

\*Papers submitted that do not meet the requirements will be returned to you ungraded.

## Assignment Checklist

Be sure to:

- Choose a specific issue in which two credible parties have documented clearly opposing positions and clear agendas
- Choose the position you agree with and argue that position using the following:
  - Three separate lines of reasoning;
  - Each line of reasoning will support your position with

- research (example, testimony, and fact/data, or any combination) that supports your position; and
- Research about the opposing position's views
- Present the opposing views and refute them.
- Include a two-part thesis with:
  - Statement of position; and
  - Forecast of your lines of reasoning
- Develop an enticing title that implies your position.
- Use a sympathetic appeal and/or cited research in the introduction to establish the issue.
- Avoid addressing the assignment directly. (Don't write "I am going to argue about..." Instead, introduce the issue in a more compelling way that makes the reader care.)
- Your voice should be professional and scholarly.
- Package your source material with appropriate signaling and commentary.

5. Submit your detailed outline as a single file upload.



## Grading Rubric: Argument Essay Draft

Criteria	Ratings
Ideas	15 pts: The paper demonstrates outstanding idea development. 12 pts: The paper demonstrates above average idea development. 11 pts: The writer sufficiently defines the topic, even though it is not fully developed. 9 pts: The paper has an idea that needs to be developed. 0 pts: There is no coherent idea.
Content	15 pts: The paper demonstrates outstanding evidence of support. 12 pts: The paper demonstrates above average evidence of support. 11 pts: The paper demonstrates sufficient support of the main idea. 9 pts: The paper requires more supporting evidence of the main idea. 0 pts: There is little content supporting the main idea.
Organization	15 pts: The organization is outstanding and showcases the central idea. 13 pts: The organizational structure is above average. 10 pts: The organizational structure is strong enough to move the reader forward. 8 pts: The writing needs a clearer sense of direction. The ideas are not fully developed. 0 pts: The organization is poor.
Word Choice, Sentence Fluency, Conventions	5 pts: The writer demonstrates an outstanding word choice and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 3 pts: The writer demonstrates above average word choice and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 2 pts: The writer demonstrates sufficient selection of words and errors of standard writing conventions. 1 pts: The writer demonstrates a limited vocabulary and language usage and grammar repeatedly distract the reader and make the writing difficult to read. 0 pts: No marks.

## Writing Community Review

For this assignment, you will need to share your Argument Essay with your writing community via the discussion. Then you will

choose a peer's essay outline from your writing community and conduct a review.

**Directions:**

1. View the grading rubric for this assignment on this page.

To post your Argument Essay to the discussion:

1. Copy and paste your draft in a new Google Doc. If you aren't familiar with Google Docs, try this resource by Google to assist you.
2. Title the Google Doc with your first initial, last name, and Argument Essay Outline, example: RSmith Argument Essay Outline
3. Set the share and edit permissions of the Google Doc to "Anyone with the link."
4. Copy and paste the URL address of the Google Doc into a new discussion post.

To review a peer's Argument Essay in your writing community:

1. Select the URL address of the peer's essay from the discussion you want to review.
2. Develop your response to your peer's writing by focusing on each of these talking points:
  - What makes the essay memorable? What did you like best?
  - What makes the topic important to the writer? What makes it compelling to the reader?
  - How did the writer structure the essay? Is there a beginning, middle, and end?
  - How effective are the author's lines of reasoning arguing his or her position?
  - What details may be missing and are needed for clarity? Is there something that the writer implies but does not actually carry out in the reasoning and discussion within the essay?
  - How compelling is the supporting research and/or evidence

for the author's position? How might it be improved?

- How well does the author present and refute the opposing position's viewpoints (including supporting sources/evidence)? How might this be improved?
- Is the essay focused at an appropriate level? Is the topic narrowed enough?
- What specific places in the essay did your peer succeed in describing a singular event or vivid, memorable details or experiences?
- Where might the essay need cuts, adds, or reorders?
- Using the 6+1 Traits Rubric, are there any weaknesses in the essay that stand out?
- Using the Dartmouth Writing Program "Attending to Grammar" link, do you recognize a grammar problem with the essay? If so, where?
- What other supportive suggestions can you identify to improve the writing?

3. Copy and paste your response at the end of the peer's Argument Essay in their Google Doc.

## *Grading Rubric: Argument Essay – Writing Community Review*

---

### **Criteria**

Student shares their essay with the class via  
Google Doc URL posted in the discussion

Student chooses a peer's essay to review

Student addresses what makes the essay  
memorable

Student addresses the theme or meaning of the essay

Student addresses essay structure

Student addresses essay details to enhance clarity

Student addresses supporting research and evidence  
provided in essay

Student addresses whether essay might need cuts,  
adds, reorders

Student applies 6+1 Writing Rubric and Grammar

Student makes supportive suggestions for  
improving the essay

---

# Argument Essay Final Draft

For this assignment, review the feedback posted from your writing community in the prior assignment: *Argument Essay: Writing Community Review*. Work your way through the revising and proofreading stages of your writing process, and submit your final version.

## **Directions:**

1. Review the grading rubric as listed on this page.
2. Review the feedback posted on your Google Doc from the *Argument Essay: Writing Community Review*.
3. Work through the revise stage of the writing process.
4. Work through the proofread stage of the writing process.
5. Create a final version of your Argument Essay according to the following:

- Minimum of 4 typed, double-spaced pages (about 800-950 words), Times New Roman, 12 pt font size (not including the Works Cited page)
- Minimum of 3 credible outside sources formatted on a source page (MLA, Works Cited)
- MLA formatting (see the “Formatting Style for Paper” page as needed)
- Submitted as either a .doc, .docx, .rtf file

\*Papers submitted that do not meet the requirements will be returned to you ungraded.

Be sure to:

- Choose a specific issue in which two credible parties have documented clearly opposing positions, and clear agendas
- Choose the position you agree with and argue that position using
  - Three separate lines of reasoning;

- Each line of reasoning will support your position with research (example, testimony, and fact/data, or any combination) that supports your position; and
- Research the opponent's views
- Present the opponent's views and refute them.
- Include a two-part thesis:
  - Statement of position; and
  - Forecast of your lines of reasoning
- Develop an enticing title that implies your position
- Use a “sympathetic” appeal and/or cited research the introduction to establish the issue
- Avoid addressing the assignment directly (don’t write “I am going to write about...” – this takes the fun out of reading the work!)
- Your voice should be professional and scholarly
- Package your source material with appropriate signaling and commentary

6. Submit your final version of your Argument Essay as a single file upload.

## Grading Rubric: Argument Essay – Final

Criteria	Ratings
Ideas	30 pts: The paper demonstrates outstanding idea development. 24 pts: The paper demonstrates above average idea development. 22 pts: The writer sufficiently defines the topic, even though the idea needs to be developed. 18 pts: The paper has an idea that needs to be developed. 0 pts: There is no coherent idea.
Content	30 pts: The paper demonstrates outstanding evidence of support. 24 pts: The paper demonstrates above average evidence of support. 22 pts: The paper demonstrates sufficient support of the main idea. 18 pts: The paper requires more supporting evidence of the main idea. 0 pts: There is little content supporting the main idea.
Organization	30 pts: The organization is outstanding and showcases the central idea. 26 pts: The organizational structure is above average. 20 pts: The organizational structure is strong enough to move the reader forward. 16 pts: The writing needs a clearer sense of direction. The ideas are not clearly connected. 0 pts: The organization is poor.
Word Choice, Sentence Fluency, Conventions	10 pts: The writer demonstrates an outstanding word choice and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 6 pts: The writer demonstrates above average word choice and strong grasp of standard writing conventions. 4 pts: The writer demonstrates sufficient selection of words and errors of standard writing conventions. 2 pts: The writer demonstrates a limited vocabulary and lack of usage and grammar repeatedly distract the reader and make the writing difficult to read. 0 pts: No marks.

## Reflection

Now that you have completed your Argument Essay, take a few minutes to reflect on the experience and write about your process.

and what you learned. Write a reflection on your Argument Essay writing experience using complete sentences.

**Directions:**

1. Review the grading rubric as listed on this page.
2. Consider the following questions.
  - What was most the challenging aspect of creating this essay?
  - What did you learn about yourself as a writer?
  - What might you do differently the next time you write this type of essay knowing what you know now after writing this essay?
3. Write your reflection on each question listed above, using complete sentences. Your final reflection assignment should fit the following guidelines:
  - 1-1.5 typed, double-spaced pages, 12 pt font size, Times New Roman;
  - Submitted as either a .doc, .docx, .rtf file.
4. Submit your reflections as a single file upload.

### *Grading Rubric: Argument Essay – Reflection*

---

**Criteria**

Student writes a thoughtful response to each question using complete sentences.  
Assignment adheres to formatting guidelines.

---



# 16. Literature Options

If you wish to include a literature-based writing assignment in your course, see the list below for options. These could be substituted for the **Compare/Contrast Essay**, the **Illustration/Example Essay** or the **Argument Essay**.

Select ONE of the following projects by ONE of the authors:

## Arthur Conan Doyle, “A Scandal in Bohemia”

Project Gutenberg Link to “A Scandal in Bohemia”

1. Compare this story with Edgar Allan Poe’s “The Purloined Letter.” How, in particular, are Holmes’s and Dupin’s methods of deduction similar or different?
2. Irene Adler contests Holmes’s perceptions of women and their abilities. Is “A Scandal in Bohemia” a feminist text? In order to answer fully, you must first describe your criteria for a feminist story and support your claim with specific examples from Doyle’s work.
3. Create a PowerPoint montage of the interpretations of the character Sherlock Holmes over the generations, noting how the character endures, even with changes, making him one of the most recognizable literary characters in history.
4. Watch the PBS version of Sherlock, episode “Scandal in Belgravia” and compare it with the original story.

## Nikolai Gogol, “The Mantle”

Project Gutenberg link to *The Mantle and Other Stories*

1. What is the relationship between realism and fantasy in “The Mantle”? Compare this combination to the Magical Realism of Gabriel García Márquez’s “A Very Old Man with Enormous Wings.”
2. Compare this story to Maupassant’s “The Necklace.” Both stories revolve around a piece of apparel and in both stories the lives of the protagonists change after they attend a party and lose (or relinquish) their prized possession. How are the overall themes of the stories similar or different?
3. Compare Akaky to another famous copyist: Bartleby. How is Herman Melville’s “Bartleby, the Scrivener” influenced by Gogol’s story?

## Henry James, “Daisy Miller”

Project Gutenberg link to *Daisy Miller: A Study*

1. As a man, Winterbourne enjoys many privileges that Daisy does not have. Explore the gender restrictions in James’s world, the ways that Daisy challenges them, and the price she pays for her defiance.
2. Creative option: Because the narration closely follows Winterbourne’s consciousness, we see very little of Daisy’s mind or motives. Look carefully through the short story for clues to Daisy’s point of view. Write a series of diary entries for Daisy from her point of view, discussing the events as they take

place in the story.

## **Guy de Maupassant, “The Diamond Necklace”**

Project Gutenberg link to “The Diamond Necklace”

1. In the end, Mathilde seems fated to be in the class she was born into, and class mobility seems an impossibility. Is Maupassant critiquing the rigidity of rigid class structures or is he suggesting that she is right to finally accept this class status? Take a position on this issue then argue and support your answer with specific examples from the text.

## **Edgar Allan Poe, “The Cask of Amontillado”**

Project Gutenberg link to “The Cask of Amontillado”

1. What elements make “The Cask of Amontillado” a horror story? Define the traits and aspects of horror and demonstrate how they are evident in the story.
2. Compare “The Cask of Amontillado” with “The Purloined Letter.” Stylistically, what do they have in common? What aspects of Poe’s craft do you see in both stories?

## Charlotte Perkins Gilman, “The Yellow Wallpaper”

Project Gutenberg link to “The Yellow Wallpaper”

1. After reading the excerpt of Gilbert and Gubar’s essay “Madwoman in the Attic” also included in the anthology, write an essay that answers the following questions: Is the ending of the story a triumph for the narrator? Why or why not?
1. Research Option: Study the history of treatments for mental illness historically and during the nineteenth century, including S. Weir Mitchell’s Rest Cure. Write an essay or create a PowerPoint or video examining such treatments. You might consider, in particular, why men and women were prescribed very different treatments for “nervous disorders.”

## 17. I Need Help



Need more information about this course? Have questions about faculty resources? Can't find what you're looking for? Experiencing technical difficulties?

We're here to help! Take advantage of the following Lumen customer-support resources:

- Check out one of Lumen's Faculty User Guides [here](#).
- Submit a support ticket [here](#) and tell us what you need.
- Talk and screen-share with a live human during Lumen's OER office hours. See available times [here](#).



PART II

# AN OVERVIEW OF THE WRITING PROCESS





# 18. Introduction to the Writing Process

Welcome to English Composition II! This course is designed to introduce you to the writing, reading, and thinking skills you will need for success at the college level. The course will emphasize personal, reflective, and expository writing. It will also help you develop critical reading skills, which will assist you as you analyze specific writing techniques and strategies you can use to improve your own writing.

In this module you will share your attitudes about writing, including any prior writing experiences (feel free to share the good, the bad, and the ugly). You will also complete an assignment that describes your writing process, your strengths and weaknesses as a writer and outlines some of your goals for the term.

## Module Outcomes

After successfully completing this module, you should be able to:

1. Identify and share attitudes about writing
2. Demonstrate the stages of the writing process
3. Communicate perceived writing strengths and weaknesses as well as writing goals for the course

# 19. Introduction to Writing

## Reading and Writing in College

### *LEARNING OBJECTIVES*

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Understand the expectations for reading and writing assignments in college courses.
- Understand and apply general strategies to complete college-level reading assignments efficiently and effectively.
- Recognize specific types of writing assignments frequently included in college courses.
- Understand and apply general strategies for managing college-level writing assignments.
- Determine specific reading and writing strategies that work best for you individually.

As you begin this section, you may be wondering why you need an introduction. After all, you have been writing and reading since elementary school. You completed numerous assessments of your reading and writing skills in high school and as part of your application process for college. You may write on the job, too. Why is a college writing course even necessary?

When you are eager to get started on the coursework in your

major that will prepare you for your career, getting excited about an introductory college writing course can be difficult. However, regardless of your field of study, honing your writing skills—and your reading and critical-thinking skills—gives you a more solid academic foundation.

In college, academic expectations change from what you may have experienced in high school. The quantity of work you are expected to do is increased. When instructors expect you to read pages upon pages or study hours and hours for one particular course, managing your work load can be challenging. This chapter includes strategies for studying efficiently and managing your time.

The quality of the work you do also changes. It is not enough to understand course material and summarize it on an exam. You will also be expected to seriously engage with new ideas by reflecting on them, analyzing them, critiquing them, making connections, drawing conclusions, or finding new ways of thinking about a given subject. Educationally, you are moving into deeper waters. A good introductory writing course will help you swim.

Table 1.1 “High School versus College Assignments” summarizes some of the other major differences between high school and college assignments.

## Table 1.1 High School versus College Assignments

High School	College
Reading assignments are moderately long. Teachers may set aside some class time for reading and reviewing the material in depth.	Some reading assignments may be very long. You will be expected to come to class with a basic understanding of the material.
Teachers often provide study guides and other aids to help you prepare for exams.	Reviewing for exams is primarily your responsibility.
Your grade is determined by your performance on a wide variety of assessments, including minor and major assignments. Not all assessments are writing based.	Your grade may depend on just a few major assessments. Most assessments are writing based.
Writing assignments include personal writing and creative writing in addition to expository writing.	Outside of creative writing courses, most writing assignments are expository.
The structure and format of writing assignments is generally stable over a four-year period.	Depending on the course, you may be asked to master new forms of writing and follow standards within a particular professional field.
Teachers often go out of their way to identify and try to help students who are performing poorly on exams, missing classes, not turning in assignments, or just struggling with the course. Often teachers will give students many “second chances.”	Although teachers want their students to succeed, they may not always realize when students are struggling. They also expect you to be proactive and take steps to help yourself. “Second chances” are less common.

This chapter covers the types of reading and writing assignments you will encounter as a college student. You will also learn a variety of strategies for mastering these new challenges—and becoming a more confident student and writer.

Throughout this chapter, you will follow a first-year student named Crystal. After several years of working as a saleswoman in a department store, Crystal has decided to pursue a degree in elementary education and become a teacher. She is continuing to work part-time, and occasionally she finds it challenging to balance the demands of work, school, and caring for her four-year-old son. As you read about Crystal, think about how you can use her experience to get the most out of your own college experience.

## *Exercise 1*

Review Table 1.1 “High School versus College Assignments” and think about how you have found your college experience to be different from high school so far. Respond to the following questions:

1. In what ways do you think college will be more rewarding for you as a learner?
2. What aspects of college do you expect to find most challenging?
3. What changes do you think you might have to make in your life to ensure your success in college?

# Reading Strategies

Your college courses will sharpen both your reading and your writing skills. Most of your writing assignments—from brief response papers to in-depth research projects—will depend on your understanding of course reading assignments or related readings you do on your own. And it is difficult, if not impossible, to write effectively about a text that you have not understood. Even when you do understand the reading, it can be hard to write about it if you do not feel personally engaged with the ideas discussed.

This section discusses strategies you can use to get the most out of your college reading assignments. These strategies fall into three broad categories:

1. **Planning strategies.** To help you manage your reading assignments.
2. **Comprehension strategies.** To help you understand the material.
3. **Active reading strategies.** To take your understanding to a higher and deeper level.

## Planning Your Reading

Have you ever stayed up all night cramming just before an exam? Or found yourself skimming a detailed memo from your boss five minutes before a crucial meeting? The first step in handling college reading successfully is planning. This involves both managing your time and setting a clear purpose for your reading.

# Managing Your Reading Time

For now, focus on setting aside enough time for reading and breaking your assignments into manageable chunks. If you are assigned a seventy-page chapter to read for next week's class, try not to wait until the night before to get started. Give yourself at least a few days and tackle one section at a time.

Your method for breaking up the assignment will depend on the type of reading. If the text is very dense and packed with unfamiliar terms and concepts, you may need to read no more than five or ten pages in one sitting so that you can truly understand and process the information. With more user-friendly texts, you will be able to handle longer sections—twenty to forty pages, for instance. And if you have a highly engaging reading assignment, such as a novel you cannot put down, you may be able to read lengthy passages in one sitting.

As the semester progresses, you will develop a better sense of how much time you need to allow for the reading assignments in different subjects. It also makes sense to preview each assignment well in advance to assess its difficulty level and to determine how much reading time to set aside.

## Tip

College instructors often set aside reserve readings for a particular course. These consist of articles, book chapters, or other texts that are not part of the primary course textbook. Copies of reserve readings are available through the university library; in print; or, more often, online. When you are assigned a reserve reading, download it ahead of time (and let your instructor know if you have trouble accessing it). Skim through it to get a rough idea of how much time you will need to read the assignment in full.



# Setting a Purpose

The other key component of planning is setting a purpose. Knowing what you want to get out of a reading assignment helps you determine how to approach it and how much time to spend on it. It also helps you stay focused during those occasional moments when it is late, you are tired, and relaxing in front of the television sounds far more appealing than curling up with a stack of journal articles.

Sometimes your purpose is simple. You might just need to understand the reading material well enough to discuss it intelligently in class the next day. However, your purpose will often go beyond that. For instance, you might also read to compare two texts, to formulate a personal response to a text, or to gather ideas for future research. Here are some questions to ask to help determine your purpose:

- **How did my instructor frame the assignment?** Often your instructors will tell you what they expect you to get out of the reading:
  - Read Chapter 2 and come to class prepared to discuss current teaching practices in elementary math.
  - Read these two articles and compare Smith's and Jones's perspectives on the 2010 health care reform bill.
  - Read Chapter 5 and think about how you could apply these guidelines to running your own business.
- **How deeply do I need to understand the reading?** If you are majoring in computer science and you are assigned to read Chapter 1, "Introduction to Computer Science," it is safe to assume the chapter presents fundamental concepts that you will be expected to master. However, for some reading assignments, you may be expected to form a general understanding but not necessarily master the content. Again,

pay attention to how your instructor presents the assignment.

- **How does this assignment relate to other course readings or to concepts discussed in class?** Your instructor may make some of these connections explicitly, but if not, try to draw connections on your own. (Needless to say, it helps to take detailed notes both when in class and when you read.)
- **How might I use this text again in the future?** If you are assigned to read about a topic that has always interested you, your reading assignment might help you develop ideas for a future research paper. Some reading assignments provide valuable tips or summaries worth bookmarking for future reference. Think about what you can take from the reading that will stay with you.

## Improving Your Comprehension

You have blocked out time for your reading assignments and set a purpose for reading. Now comes the challenge: making sure you actually understand all the information you are expected to process. Some of your reading assignments will be fairly straightforward. Others, however, will be longer or more complex, so you will need a plan for how to handle them.

For any expository writing—that is, nonfiction, informational writing—your first comprehension goal is to identify the main points and relate any details to those main points. Because college-level

texts can be challenging, you will also need to monitor your reading comprehension. That is, you will need to stop periodically and assess how well you understand what you are reading. Finally, you can improve comprehension by taking time to determine which strategies work best for you and putting those strategies into practice.

## Identifying the Main Points

In college, you will read a wide variety of materials, including the following:

- **Textbooks.** These usually include summaries, glossaries, comprehension questions, and other study aids.
- **Nonfiction trade books.** These are less likely to include the study features found in textbooks.
- **Popular magazine, newspaper, or web articles.** These are usually written for a general audience.
- **Scholarly books and journal articles.** These are written for an audience of specialists in a given field.

Regardless of what type of expository text you are assigned to read, your primary comprehension goal is to identify the main point: the most important idea that the writer wants to communicate and often states early on. Finding the main point gives you a framework to organize the details presented in the reading and relate the reading to concepts you learned in class or through other reading assignments. After identifying the main point, you will find the

supporting points, the details, facts, and explanations that develop and clarify the main point.

Some texts make that task relatively easy. Textbooks, for instance, include the aforementioned features as well as headings and subheadings intended to make it easier for students to identify core concepts. Graphic features, such as sidebars, diagrams, and charts, help students understand complex information and distinguish between essential and inessential points. When you are assigned to read from a textbook, be sure to use available comprehension aids to help you identify the main points.

Trade books and popular articles may not be written specifically for an educational purpose; nevertheless, they also include features that can help you identify the main ideas. These features include the following:

- **Trade books.** Many trade books include an introduction that presents the writer's main ideas and purpose for writing. Reading chapter titles (and any subtitles within the chapter) will help you get a broad sense of what is covered. It also helps to read the beginning and ending paragraphs of a chapter closely. These paragraphs often sum up the main ideas presented.
- **Popular articles.** Reading the headings and introductory paragraphs carefully is crucial. In magazine articles, these features (along with the closing paragraphs) present the main concepts. Hard news articles in newspapers present the gist of the news story in the lead paragraph, while subsequent paragraphs present increasingly general details.

At the far end of the reading difficulty scale are scholarly books and journal articles. Because these texts are written for a specialized, highly educated audience, the authors presume their readers are already familiar with the topic. The language and writing style is sophisticated and sometimes dense.

When you read scholarly books and journal articles, try to apply

the same strategies discussed earlier. The introduction usually presents the writer's thesis, the idea or hypothesis the writer is trying to prove. Headings and subheadings can help you understand how the writer has organized support for his or her thesis. Additionally, academic journal articles often include a summary at the beginning, called an abstract, and electronic databases include summaries of articles, too.

## Monitoring Your Comprehension

Finding the main idea and paying attention to text features as you read helps you figure out what you should know. Just as important, however, is being able to figure out what you do not know and developing a strategy to deal with it.

Textbooks often include comprehension questions in the margins or at the end of a section or chapter. As you read, stop occasionally to answer these questions on paper or in your head. Use them to identify sections you may need to reread, read more carefully, or ask your instructor about later.

Even when a text does not have built-in comprehension features, you can actively monitor your own comprehension. Try these strategies, adapting them as needed to suit different kinds of texts:

1. **Summarize.** At the end of each section, pause to summarize the main points in a few sentences. If you have trouble doing so, revisit that section.

2. **Ask and answer questions.** When you begin reading a section, try to identify two to three questions you should be able to answer after you finish it. Write down your questions and use them to test yourself on the reading. If you cannot answer a question, try to determine why. Is the answer buried in that section of reading but just not coming across to you? Or do you expect to find the answer in another part of the reading?
3. **Do not read in a vacuum.** Look for opportunities to discuss the reading with your classmates. Many instructors set up online discussion forums or blogs specifically for that purpose. Participating in these discussions can help you determine whether your understanding of the main points is the same as your peers'.

These discussions can also serve as a reality check. If everyone in the class struggled with the reading, it may be exceptionally challenging. If it was a breeze for everyone but you, you may need to see your instructor for help.

As a working mother, Crystal found that the best time to get her reading done was in the evening, after she had put her four-year-old to bed. However, she occasionally had trouble concentrating at the end of a long day. She found that by actively working to summarize the reading and asking and answering questions, she focused better and retained more of what she read. She also found that evenings were a good time to check the class discussion forums that a few of her instructors had created.

## *Exercise 2*

Choose any text that that you have been assigned to read for one of your college courses. In your notes, complete the following tasks:

1. Summarize the main points of the text in two to three sentences.
2. Write down two to three questions about the text that you can bring up during class discussion.

## Tip

Students are often reluctant to seek help. They feel like doing so marks them as slow, weak, or demanding. The truth is, every learner occasionally struggles. If you are sincerely trying to keep up with the course reading but feel like you are in over your head, seek out help. Speak up in class, schedule a meeting with your instructor, or visit your university learning center for assistance.

Deal with the problem as early in the semester as you can. Instructors respect students who are proactive about their own learning. Most instructors will work

hard to help students who make the effort to help themselves.

## Taking It to the Next Level: Active Reading

Now that you have acquainted (or reacquainted) yourself with useful planning and comprehension strategies, college reading assignments may feel more manageable. You know what you need to do to get your reading done and make sure you grasp the main points. However, the most successful students in college are not only competent readers but active, engaged readers.



# Using the SQ<sub>3</sub>R Strategy

One strategy you can use to become a more active, engaged reader is the SQ<sub>3</sub>R strategy, a step-by-step process to follow before, during, and after reading. You may already use some variation of it. In essence, the process works like this:

1. **Survey** the text in advance.
2. Form **questions** before you start reading.
3. **Read** the text.
4. **Recite** and/or **record** important points during and after reading.
5. **Review** and **reflect** on the text after you read.

Before you read, you survey, or preview, the text. As noted earlier, reading introductory paragraphs and headings can help you begin to figure out the author's main point and identify what important topics will be covered. However, surveying does not stop there. Look over sidebars, photographs, and any other text or graphic features that catch your eye. Skim a few paragraphs. Preview any boldfaced or italicized vocabulary terms. This will help you form a first impression of the material.

Next, start brainstorming questions about the text. What do you expect to learn from the reading? You may find that some questions come to mind immediately based on your initial survey or based on previous readings and class discussions. If not, try using headings and subheadings in the text to formulate questions. For instance, if one heading in your textbook reads "Medicare and Medicaid," you might ask yourself these questions:

- When was Medicare and Medicaid legislation enacted? Why?
- What are the major differences between these two programs?

Although some of your questions may be simple factual questions, try to come up with a few that are more open-ended. Asking in-depth questions will help you stay more engaged as you read.

The next step is simple: read. As you read, notice whether your first impressions of the text were correct. Are the author's main points and overall approach about the same as what you predicted—or does the text contain a few surprises? Also, look for answers to your earlier questions and begin forming new questions. Continue to revise your impressions and questions as you read.

While you are reading, pause occasionally to recite or record important points. It is best to do this at the end of each section or when there is an obvious shift in the writer's train of thought. Put the book aside for a moment and recite aloud the main points of the section or any important answers you found there. You might also record ideas by jotting down a few brief notes in addition to, or instead of, reciting aloud. Either way, the physical act of articulating information makes you more likely to remember it.

After you have completed the reading, take some time to review the material more thoroughly. If the textbook includes review questions or your instructor has provided a study guide, use these tools to guide your review. You will want to record information in a more detailed format than you used during reading, such as in an outline or a list.

As you review the material, reflect on what you learned. Did anything surprise you, upset you, or make you think? Did you find yourself strongly agreeing or disagreeing with any points in the text? What topics would you like to explore further? Jot down your reflections in your notes. (Instructors sometimes require students to write brief response papers or maintain a reading journal. Use these assignments to help you reflect on what you read.)

### *Exercise 3*

Choose another text that that you have been assigned to read for a class. Use the SQ3R process to complete the reading. (Keep in mind that you may need to spread the reading over more than one session, especially if the text is long.)

Be sure to complete all the steps involved. Then, reflect on how helpful you found this process. On a scale of one to ten, how useful did you find it? How does it compare with other study techniques you have used?

## Using Other Active Reading Strategies

The SQ3R process encompasses a number of valuable active reading strategies: previewing a text, making predictions, asking and answering questions, and summarizing. You can use the following additional strategies to further deepen your understanding of what you read.

- **Connect what you read to what you already know.** Look for

ways the reading supports, extends, or challenges concepts you have learned elsewhere.

- **Relate the reading to your own life.** What statements, people, or situations relate to your personal experiences?
- **Visualize.** For both fiction and nonfiction texts, try to picture what is described. Visualizing is especially helpful when you are reading a narrative text, such as a novel or a historical account, or when you read expository text that describes a process, such as how to perform cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR).
- **Pay attention to graphics as well as text.** Photographs, diagrams, flow charts, tables, and other graphics can help make abstract ideas more concrete and understandable.
- **Understand the text in context.** Understanding context means thinking about who wrote the text, when and where it was written, the author's purpose for writing it, and what assumptions or agendas influenced the author's ideas. For instance, two writers might both address the subject of health care reform, but if one article is an opinion piece and one is a news story, the context is different.
- **Plan to talk or write about what you read.** Jot down a few questions or comments in your notebook so you can bring them up in class. (This also gives you a source of topic ideas for papers and presentations later in the semester.) Discuss the reading on a class discussion board or blog about it.

As Crystal began her first semester of elementary education courses, she occasionally felt lost in a sea of new terms and theories about teaching and child development. She found that it helped to relate the reading to her personal observations of her son and other kids she knew.

## *Writing at Work*

Many college courses require students to participate in interactive online components, such as a discussion forum, a page on a social networking site, or a class blog. These tools are a great way to reinforce learning. Do not be afraid to be the student who starts the discussion.

Remember that when you interact with other students and teachers online, you need to project a mature, professional image. You may be able to use an informal, conversational tone, but complaining about the work load, using off-color language, or “flaming” other participants is inappropriate.

Active reading can benefit you in ways that go beyond just earning good grades. By practicing these strategies, you will find yourself more interested in your courses and better able to relate your academic work to the rest of your life. Being an interested, engaged student also helps you form lasting connections with your instructors and with other students that can be personally and professionally valuable. In short, it helps you get the most out of your education.

## Common Writing

# Assignments

College writing assignments serve a different purpose than the typical writing assignments you completed in high school. In high school, teachers generally focus on teaching you to write in a variety of modes and formats, including personal writing, expository writing, research papers, creative writing, and writing short answers and essays for exams. Over time, these assignments help you build a foundation of writing skills.

In college, many instructors will expect you to already have that foundation.

Your college composition courses will focus on writing for its own sake, helping you make the transition to college-level writing assignments. However, in most other college courses, writing assignments serve a different purpose. In those courses, you may use writing as one tool among many for learning how to think about a particular academic discipline.

Additionally, certain assignments teach you how to meet the expectations for professional writing in a given field. Depending on the class, you might be asked to write a lab report, a case study, a literary analysis, a business plan, or an account of a personal interview. You will need to learn and follow the standard conventions for those types of written products.

Finally, personal and creative writing assignments are less common in college than in high school. College courses emphasize expository writing, writing that explains or informs. Often expository writing assignments will incorporate outside research, too. Some classes will also require persuasive writing assignments in which you state and support your position on an issue. College instructors will hold you to a higher standard when it comes to supporting your ideas with reasons and evidence.

Table 1.2 “Common Types of College Writing Assignments” lists some of the most common types of college writing assignments.

It includes minor, less formal assignments as well as major ones. Which specific assignments you encounter will depend on the courses you take and the learning objectives developed by your instructors.

## Table 1.2 Common Types of College Writing Assignments

Assignment Type	Description	Example
<b>Personal Response Paper</b>	Expresses and explains your response to a reading assignment, a provocative quote, or a specific issue; may be very brief (sometimes a page or less) or more in-depth	For an environmental science course, students watch and write about President Obama's June 15, 2010, speech about the BP oil spill in the Gulf of Mexico.
<b>Summary</b>	Restates the main points of a longer passage objectively and in your own words	For a psychology course, students write a one-page summary of an article about a man suffering from short-term memory loss.
<b>Position Paper</b>	States and defends your position on an issue (often a controversial issue)	For a medical ethics course, students state and support their position on using stem cell research in medicine.
<b>Problem-Solution Paper</b>	Presents a problem, explains its causes, and proposes and explains a solution	For a business administration course, a student presents a plan for implementing an office recycling program without increasing operating costs.
<b>Literary Analysis</b>	States a thesis about a particular literary work (or works) and develops the thesis with evidence from the work and, sometimes, from additional sources	For a literature course, a student compares two novels by the twentieth-century African American writer Richard Wright.
<b>Research Review or Survey</b>	Sums up available research findings on a particular topic	For a course in media studies, a student reviews the past twenty years of research on whether violence in television and movies is correlated with violent behavior.



Assignment Type	Description	Example
<b>Case Study or Case Analysis</b>	Investigates a particular person, group, or event in depth for the purpose of drawing a larger conclusion from the analysis	For an education course, a student writes a case study of a developmentally disabled child whose academic performance improved because of a behavioral-modification program.
<b>Laboratory Report</b>	Presents a laboratory experiment, including the hypothesis, methods of data collection, results, and conclusions	For a psychology course, a group of students presents the results of an experiment in which they explored whether sleep deprivation produced memory deficits in lab rats.
<b>Research Journal</b>	Records a student's ideas and findings during the course of a long-term research project	For an education course, a student maintains a journal throughout a semester-long research project at a local elementary school.
<b>Research Paper</b>	Presents a thesis and supports it with original research and/or other researchers' findings on the topic; can take several different formats depending on the subject area	For examples of typical research projects, see Chapter 12 "Writing a Research Paper".

## WRITING AT WORK

Part of managing your education is communicating well with others at your university. For instance, you might need to e-mail your instructor to request an office appointment or explain why you will need to miss a class. You might need to contact administrators with questions about your

tuition or financial aid. Later, you might ask instructors to write recommendations on your behalf.

Treat these documents as professional communications. Address the recipient politely; state your question, problem, or request clearly; and use a formal, respectful tone. Doing so helps you make a positive impression and get a quicker response.

### *Key Takeaways*

- College-level reading and writing assignments differ from high school assignments not only in quantity but also in quality.
- Managing college reading assignments successfully requires you to plan and manage your time, set a purpose for reading, practice effective comprehension strategies, and use active reading strategies to deepen your understanding of the text.
- College writing assignments place greater emphasis on learning to think critically about a particular discipline and less emphasis on personal and creative writing.

## 20. Your Role as a Learner

### Developing Study Skills

#### *LEARNING OBJECTIVES*

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Use strategies for managing time effectively as a college student.
- Understand and apply strategies for taking notes efficiently.
- Determine the specific time-management, study, and note-taking strategies that work best for you individually.

By now, you have a general idea of what to expect from your college courses. You have probably received course syllabi, started on your first few assignments, and begun applying the strategies you learned about in the previous section.

At the beginning of the semester, your work load is relatively light. This is the perfect time to brush up on your study skills and establish good habits. When the demands on your time and energy

become more intense, you will have a system in place for handling them.

This section covers specific strategies for managing your time effectively. You will also learn about different note-taking systems that you can use to organize and record information efficiently.

As you work through this section, remember that every student is different. The strategies presented here are tried and true techniques that work well for many people. However, you may need to adapt them slightly to develop a system that works well for you personally. If your friend swears by her smartphone, but you hate having to carry extra electronic gadgets around, then using a smartphone will not be the best organizational strategy for you.

Read with an open mind, and consider what techniques have been effective (or ineffective) for you in the past. Which habits from your high school years or your work life could help you succeed in college? Which habits might get in your way? What changes might you need to make?

## Understanding Yourself as a Learner

To succeed in college—or any situation where you must master new concepts and skills—it helps to know what makes you tick. For decades, educational researchers and organizational psychologists have examined how people take in and assimilate new information, how some people learn differently than others, and what conditions

make students and workers most productive. Here are just a few questions to think about:

- **What is your learning style?** For the purposes of this chapter, learning style refers to the way you prefer to take in new information, by seeing, by listening, or through some other channel. For more information, see the section on learning styles.
- **What times of day are you most productive?** If your energy peaks early, you might benefit from blocking out early morning time for studying or writing. If you are a night owl, set aside a few evenings a week for schoolwork.
- **How much clutter can you handle in your work space?** Some people work fine at a messy desk and know exactly where to find what they need in their stack of papers; however, most people benefit from maintaining a neat, organized space.
- **How well do you juggle potential distractions in your environment?** If you can study at home without being tempted to turn on the television, check your e-mail, fix yourself a snack, and so on, you may make home your work space. However, if you need a less distracting environment to stay focused, you may be able to find one on your college's campus or in your community.
- **Does a little background noise help or hinder your productivity?** Some people work better when listening to background music or the low hum of conversation in a coffee shop. Others need total silence.
- **When you work with a partner or group, do you stay on task?** A study partner or group can sometimes be invaluable. However, working this way takes extra planning and effort, so be sure to use the time productively. If you find that group study sessions turn into social occasions, you may study better on your own.
- **How do you manage stress?** Accept that at certain points in the semester, you will feel stressed out. In your day-to-day

routine, make time for activities that help you reduce stress, such as exercising, spending time with friends, or just scheduling downtime to relax.

## Learning Styles

Most people have one channel that works best for them when it comes to taking in new information. Knowing yours can help you develop strategies for studying, time management, and note taking that work especially well for you.

To begin identifying your learning style, think about how you would go about the process of assembling a piece of furniture. Which of these options sounds most like you?

1. You would carefully look over the diagrams in the assembly manual first so you could picture each step in the process.
2. You would silently read the directions through, step by step, and then look at the diagrams afterward.
3. You would read the directions aloud under your breath. Having someone explain the steps to you would also help.
4. You would start putting the pieces together and figure out the process through trial and error, consulting the directions as you worked.

Now read the following explanations. Again, think about whether each description sounds like you.

- If you chose (a), you may be a visual learner. You understand

ideas best when they are presented in a visual format, such as a flowchart, a diagram, or text with clear headings and many photos or illustrations.

- If you chose (b), you may be a verbal learner. You understand ideas best through reading and writing about them and taking detailed notes.
- If you chose (c), you may be an auditory learner. You understand ideas best through listening. You learn well from spoken lectures or books on tape.
- If you chose (d), you may be a kinesthetic learner. You learn best through doing and prefer hands-on activities. In long lectures, fidgeting may help you focus.

Your learning style does not completely define you as a student. Auditory learners can comprehend a flow chart, and kinesthetic learners can sit still long enough to read a book. However, if you do have one dominant learning style, you can work with it to get the most out of your classes and study time. Table 1.3 “Learning Style Strategies” lists some tips for maximizing your learning style.

## Table 1.3 Learning Style Strategies

Learning Style	Strategies
<b>Visual</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When possible, represent concepts visually—in charts, diagrams, or sketches.</li> <li>• Use a visual format for taking notes on reading assignments or lectures.</li> <li>• Use different-colored highlighters or pens to color-code information as you read.</li> <li>• Use visual organizers, such as maps, flowcharts, and so forth, to help you plan writing assignments.</li> <li>• Use colored pens, highlighters, or the review feature of your word-processing program to revise and edit writing.</li> </ul>
<b>Verbal</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use the instructional features in course texts—summaries, chapter review questions, glossaries, and so on—to aid your studying.</li> <li>• Take notes on your reading assignments.</li> <li>• Rewrite or condense reading notes and lecture notes to study.</li> <li>• Summarize important ideas in your own words.</li> <li>• Use informal writing techniques, such as brainstorming, freewriting, blogging, or posting on a class discussion forum to generate ideas for writing assignments.</li> <li>• Reread and take notes on your writing to help you revise and edit.</li> </ul>
<b>Auditory</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ask your instructor's permission to tape-record lectures to supplement your notes.</li> <li>• Read parts of your textbook or notes aloud when you study.</li> <li>• If possible, obtain an audiobook version of important course texts. Make use of supplemental audio materials, such as CDs or DVDs.</li> <li>• Talk through your ideas with other students when studying or when preparing for a writing assignment.</li> <li>• Read your writing aloud to help you draft, revise, and edit.</li> </ul>



---

**Learning  
Style****Strategies****Kinesthetic**

- When you read or study, use techniques that will keep your hands in motion, such as highlighting or taking notes.
- Use tactile study aids, such as flash cards or study guides you design yourself.
- Use self-stick notes to record ideas for writing. These notes can be physically reorganized easily to help you determine how to shape your paper.
- Use a physical activity, such as running or swimming, to help you break through writing blocks.
- Take breaks during studying to stand, stretch, or move around.

## Tip

The material presented here about learning styles is just the tip of the iceberg. There are numerous other variations in how people learn. Some people like to act on information right away while others reflect on it first. Some people excel at mastering details and understanding concrete, tried and true ideas while others enjoy exploring abstract theories and innovative, even impractical ideas. For more information about how

you learn, visit your school's academic resource center.

## Time Management

In college you have increased freedom to structure your time as you please. With that freedom comes increased responsibility. High school teachers often take it upon themselves to track down students who miss class or forget assignments. College instructors, however, expect you to take full responsibility for managing yourself and getting your work done on time.

### Getting Started: Short- and Long-Term Planning

At the beginning of the semester, establish a weekly routine for

when you will study and write. A general guideline is that for every hour spent in class, students should expect to spend another two to three hours on reading, writing, and studying for tests. Therefore, if you are taking a biology course that meets three times a week for an hour at a time, you can expect to spend six to nine hours per week on it outside of class. You will need to budget time for each class just like an employer schedules shifts at work, and you must make that study time a priority.

That may sound like a lot when taking multiple classes, but if you plan your time carefully, it is manageable. A typical full-time schedule of fifteen credit hours translates into thirty to forty-five hours per week spent on schoolwork outside of class. All in all, a full-time student would spend about as much time on school each week as an employee spends on work. Balancing school and a job can be more challenging, but still doable.

In addition to setting aside regular work periods, you will need to plan ahead to handle more intense demands, such as studying for exams and writing major papers. At the beginning of the semester, go through your course syllabi and mark all major due dates and exam dates on a calendar. Use a format that you check regularly, such as your smartphone or the calendar feature in your e-mail. (In Section 1.3 “Becoming a Successful College Writer” you will learn strategies for planning out major writing assignments so you can complete them on time.)

## Tip

The two- to three-hour rule may sound intimidating. However, keep in mind that this is only a rule of thumb. Realistically, some courses will be more challenging than others, and the demands will ebb and flow throughout the semester. You may have trouble-free weeks and stressful weeks. When you schedule your classes, try to balance introductory-level classes with more advanced classes so that your work load stays manageable.

Crystal knew that to balance a job, college classes, and a family, it was crucial for her to get organized. For the month of September, she drew up a week-by-week calendar that listed not only her own class and work schedules but also the days her son attended preschool and the days her husband had off from work. She and her husband discussed how to share their day-to-day household responsibilities so she would be able to get her schoolwork done. Crystal also made a note to talk to her supervisor at work about reducing her hours during finals week in December.

## *Exercise 1*

Now that you have learned some time-management basics, it is time to apply those skills. For this exercise, you will develop a weekly schedule and a semester calendar.

1. Working with your class schedule, map out a week-long schedule of study time. Try to apply the “two- to three-hour” rule. Be sure to include any other nonnegotiable responsibilities, such as a job or child care duties.
2. Use your course syllabi to record exam dates and due dates for major assignments in a calendar (paper or electronic). Use a star, highlighting, or other special marking to set off any days or weeks that look especially demanding.

# Staying Consistent: Time Management Dos and Don'ts

Setting up a schedule is easy. Sticking with it, however, may create challenges. A schedule that looked great on paper may prove to be unrealistic. Sometimes, despite students' best intentions, they end

up procrastinating or pulling all-nighters to finish a paper or study for an exam.

Keep in mind, however, that your weekly schedule and semester calendar are time-management tools. Like any tools, their effectiveness depends on the user: you. If you leave a tool sitting in the box unused (e.g., if you set up your schedule and then forget about it), it will not help you complete the task. And if, for some reason, a particular tool or strategy is not getting the job done, you need to figure out why and maybe try using something else.

With that in mind, read the list of time-management dos and don'ts. Keep this list handy as a reference you can use throughout the semester to “troubleshoot” if you feel like your schoolwork is getting off track.

## Dos

1. Set aside time to review your schedule or calendar regularly and update or adjust them as needed.
2. Be realistic when you schedule study time. Do not plan to write your paper on Friday night when everyone else is out socializing. When Friday comes, you might end up abandoning your plans and hanging out with your friends instead.
3. Be honest with yourself about where your time goes. Do not fritter away your study time on distractions like e-mail and social networking sites.
4. Accept that occasionally your work may get a little off track. No one is perfect.
5. Accept that sometimes you may not have time for all the fun

things you would like to do.

6. Recognize times when you feel overextended. Sometimes you may just need to get through an especially demanding week. However, if you feel exhausted and overworked all the time, you may need to scale back on some of your commitments.
7. Have a plan for handling high-stress periods, such as final exam week. Try to reduce your other commitments during those periods—for instance, by scheduling time off from your job. Build in some time for relaxing activities, too.

## Don'ts

1. Do not procrastinate on challenging assignments. Instead, break them into smaller, manageable tasks that can be accomplished one at a time.
2. Do not fall into the trap of “all-or-nothing” thinking: “There is no way I can fit in a three-hour study session today, so I will just wait until the weekend.” Extended periods of free time are hard to come by, so find ways to use small blocks of time productively. For instance, if you have a free half hour between classes, use it to preview a chapter or brainstorm ideas for an essay.
3. Do not fall into the trap of letting things slide and promising yourself, “I will do better next week.” When next week comes, the accumulated undone tasks will seem even more intimidating, and you will find it harder to get them done.
4. Do not rely on caffeine and sugar to compensate for lack of sleep. These stimulants may temporarily perk you up, but your

brain functions best when you are rested.



## 2I. What is an Essay?

If you were asked to describe an essay in one word, what would that one word be?

Okay, well, in one word, an essay is an **idea**.

No idea; no essay.

But more than that, the best essays have *original and insightful* ideas.

Photo of a sign reading "IDEA." The letters are formed out of orange metal and lit up with exposed light bulbs, set against a black backdrop

Okay, so the first thing we need to begin an essay is an *insightful idea* that we wish to share with the reader.

But original and insightful ideas do not just pop up every day. Where does one find original and insightful ideas?

Let's start here: an idea is an *insight* gained from either a) our personal experiences, or b) in scholarship, from synthesizing the ideas of others to create a new idea.

In this class (except for the last essay) we write **personal essays**; therefore, we will focus mostly on a) *personal experience* as a source for our ideas.

Life teaches us lessons. We learn from our life experiences. This is how we grow as human beings. So before you start on your essays, reflect on your life experiences by employing one or more of the brainstorming strategies described in this course. Your brainstorming and prewriting assignments are important assignments because remember: *no idea; no essay*. Brainstorming can help you discover an *idea* for your essay. So, ask yourself: What lessons have I learned? What insights have I gained that I can write about and share with my reader? Your reader can learn from you.

### **Why do we write?**

We write to improve our world; it's that simple. We write personal essays to address the most problematic and fundamental

question of all: What does it mean to be a human being? By sharing the insights and lessons we have learned from our life experiences we can add to our community's collective wisdom.

We respect the writings of experts. And, guess what; you are an expert! You are the best expert of all on one subject—*your own life experiences*. So when we write personal essays, we research our own life experiences and describe those experiences with rich and compelling language to convince our reader that our idea is valid.

For example:

For your *Narrative* essay: do more than simply relate a series of events. Let the events make a point about the central *idea* you are trying to teach us.

For your *Example* essay: do more than tell us about your experience. *Show* us your experience. *Describe* your examples in descriptive details so that your reader actually experiences for themselves the central *idea* you wish to teach them.

For the *Comparison Contrast* essay: do more than simply tell us about the differences and similarities of two things. *Evaluate* those differences and similarities and draw an *idea* about them, so that you can offer your reader some basic insight into the comparison.

Okay, one last comment. Often students say to me: “I am so young; I do not have any meaningful insights in to life.” Okay, well, you may not be able to solve the pressing issues of

Photo of an open moleskin journal, showing two blank lined pages

the day, but think of it this way. What if a younger brother or sister came to you and in an anxious voice said; “I’ve got to do X. I’ve never had to do X. You’ve had some experience with X. Can you give me some advice?” You may have some wisdom and insights from your own life experience with X to share with that person. Don’t worry about solving the BIG issues in this class. You can serve the world as well by simply addressing, and bringing to life in words, the problems and life situations that you know best, no matter how mundane. Please notice that with rare exception the essays you will read in this class do *not* cite outside sources. They are all written

from the author's actual life experiences. So think of your audience as someone who can learn from your life experiences and write to them and for them.

# 22. Reading to Write

## WHAT THIS HANDOUT IS ABOUT

This handout suggests reading, note-taking, and writing strategies for when you need to use reading assignments or sources as the springboard for writing a paper.

## READING STRATEGIES

- **Read (or at least skim) all parts of the reading.** Sometimes the cover, title, preface, introduction, illustrations, appendices, epilogue, footnotes and “about the author” sections can provide you with valuable information.
- **Identify the genre of the reading.** What kind of a reading is it? (Journal article? Mass media? Novel? Textbook?) Why was it written? Who does the author assume is going to read this work? (Books about politics written for an audience of political scientists, for example, might be very different from books about politics written for the general public, for historians, or for sociologists.)
- **Consider the author.** What do you know or what can you learn about this person? Why did he or she write the book? What sources of information and/or methods did he or she use to gather the information presented in the book?
- **Guess why your instructor assigned the reading.** How does it fit in with other readings, class discussions, major course themes, or the purpose of the class?
- **Get out a calendar and plan your reading.** Get out a calendar and plan your reading. Plot the number of days or hours that it

may take you to complete the reading. Be realistic. It may help to read one chapter of the reading and then revise your calendar—some readings take longer than others of a similar length. Visit the Learning Center if you'd like to learn more about scheduling your work or reading more quickly and effectively.

- **As you read, record your reactions and questions.** Any reaction or question is valid, from the specific (“What’s that word mean?”) to the general (“What’s her point?”). Write them down now so that you’ll remember them later. These reactions and questions can serve as material for class discussion, or they can be the jumping off point for brainstorming a paper.
- **Read with a friend.** Find someone else who is reading the same book. Set reading goals together and plan to share your reactions to sections of the reading before class, after class, over e-mail, and so on.
- **Visit your instructor during office hours to discuss the reading.** Your instructor will set aside hours when he or she will be available to meet with students. This is a great time to talk about the reading, ask questions, share your reactions, and get to know your instructor. You can do this with a friend or in a small group as well.
- **Think about what is missing in the reading.** Issues, events, or ideas that are missing, left out, avoided, or not discussed/ addressed in the book might be important. Thinking about these omissions can give you a critical perspective on the reading by showing you what the author (consciously or unconsciously) doesn’t want to deal with.
- **If you know you will have to answer a particular question in response to the reading, read with that question in mind.** Sometimes faculty will give you essay questions in advance. As you read the text, refer back to those questions and think about your emerging answers to them.

## WRITING STRATEGIES

### While reading

- **Write as you read.** Record your reactions informally and briefly after you've read for a while. When you're done reading a section, write for five minutes to capture your personal thoughts, reactions, and questions as you go along.
- **Keep your notes with your book.** Tuck a few sheets of paper or a notepad inside the book to record your ideas as you read.
- **Share your informal writing with a friend.** Trade notes/questions/reactions to the book. Write five-minute responses to one another about the reading. This can be done by e-mail.
- **Draw while you read.** Drawing pictures, maps or diagrams of relationships or important issues that you see emerging from the reading can help you understand them. Be willing to revise or redraw the map as you read.

### After you read

- **React to the whole reading.** Take twenty minutes to record your reactions to the reading as a whole. (Return to the reading strategies list to get you started if you need to.) Don't be afraid to guess, hypothesize, or follow a tangent.
- **Reread the writing assignment.** The Writing Center has a useful handout on understanding assignments that may help.
- **Get out a calendar and schedule the time you will need to write your paper.** Working backwards from the due date, plot a timeline for producing the paper. Include time for at least one rough draft and one chance to receive feedback from others (a friend, your teaching assistant, your professor, the

Writing Center, etc.) before turning it in.

- **Plan your research and think about citation.** If the assignment requires library research, decide upon a strategy for collecting and citing sources as you research and write. Be sure to cite any quoted information or information that was not generated by your own analysis. Your instructor can answer all of your questions about this important step.
- **Write a draft, preferably a few days before the paper is due.** Instructors can usually tell the difference between papers that have been carefully drafted and revised and papers that have been hurriedly written the night before they are due. Papers written the night before often receive disappointing grades.
- **Get feedback from at least one person, and preferably several people, before you finalize your draft.** When possible, give your readers a copy of the assignment, too. E-mail can make this process easier. See the Writing Center's handout on getting feedback.
- **Proofread your paper to catch errors before handing it in.** Taking the time to spell-check and proofread will make your paper easier to read and show your reader that you cared about the assignment. The Writing Center's handout on editing and proofreading may help.

## When you get your paper back

- **Read all of your instructor's comments.** Assess your strengths and weaknesses in completing this reading/writing assignment. Plan what adjustments you'll make in the process for the next reading/writing assignment you will undertake. It may help to save all of your old papers so that you can refer back to them and look for patterns in your instructor's comments. You may also want to keep a small notebook for your own assessment—writing down that you didn't leave

ample time for revision on one paper, for example, may help you remember to schedule your time more effectively for the next paper.



## 23. Defining the Writing Process

On the surface, nothing could be simpler than writing: You sit down, you pick up a pen or open a document on your computer, and you write words. But anyone who has procrastinated or struggled with writer's block knows that the writing process is more arduous, if not somewhat mysterious and unpredictable.

People often think of writing in terms of its end product—the email, the report, the memo, essay, or research paper, all of which result from the time and effort spent in the act of writing. In this course, however, you will be introduced to writing as the recursive process of planning, drafting, and revising.

### Writing is Recursive

You will focus as much on the process of writing as you will on its end product (the writing you normally submit for feedback or a grade). *Recursive* means circling back; and, more often than not, the writing process will have you running in circles. You might be in the middle of your draft when you realize you need to do more brainstorming, so you return to the planning stage. Even when you have finished a draft, you may find changes you want to make to an introduction. In truth, every writer must develop his or her own process for getting the writing done, but there are some basic strategies and techniques you can adapt to make your work a little easier, more fulfilling and effective.

## Developing Your Writing Process

The final product of a piece of writing is undeniably important, but the emphasis of this course is on developing a writing process that works for you. Some of you may already know what strategies and techniques assist you in your writing. You may already be familiar with prewriting techniques, such as freewriting, clustering, and listing. You may already have a regular writing practice. But the rest of you may need to discover what works through trial and error. Developing individual strategies and techniques that promote painless and compelling writing can take some time. So, be patient.

### A Writer's Process: Ali Hale

Read and examine *The Writing Process* by Ali Hale. Think of this document as a framework for defining the process in distinct stages: Prewriting, Writing, Revising, Editing, and Publishing. You may already be familiar with these terms. You may recall from past experiences that some resources refer to prewriting as planning and some texts refer to writing as drafting.

What is important to grasp early on is that the act of writing is more than sitting down and writing something. Please avoid the “one and done” attitude, something instructors see all too often in undergraduate writing courses. Use Hale’s essay as your starting point for defining your own process.

### A Writer's Process: Anne Lamott

In the video below, Anne Lamott, a writer of both non-fiction and fiction works, as well as the instructional novel on writing *Bird by Bird: Instructions on Writing*, discusses her own journey as a writer,

including the obstacles she has to overcome every time she sits down to begin her creative process. She will refer to terms such as “the down draft,” “the up draft,” and “the dental draft.”

As you watch, think about how her terms, “down draft,” “up draft,” “dental draft,” work with those presented by Hale’s *The Writing Process*. What does Lamott mean by these terms? Can you identify with her process or with the one Hale describes? How are they related?

Also, when viewing the interview, pay careful attention to the following timeframe: 11:23 to 27:27 minutes and make a list of tips and strategies you find particularly helpful. Think about how your own writing process fits with what Hale and Lamott have to say. Is yours similar? Different? Is there any new information you have learned that you did not know before exposure to these works?



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online

here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=42#oembed-1>

## 24. Videos: Prewriting Techniques

### Brainstorming

Brainstorming is a technique of listing as many ideas as possible about your writing topic. The greatest rule of brainstorming is to keep the process as broad and open as possible. This video suggests several things that you DON'T want to do.



*One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=43#oembed-1>*

### Mindmapping

Mindmapping is similar to brainstorming, but it is much more visual. It allows you to create connections between ideas. It can be a useful step after brainstorming, or it may match your style better if brainstorming seems too random. This video provides a good overview:



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=43#oembed-2>

## Freewriting

Freewriting is a process of simply writing. It helps you get started and can expand your thinking. Watch this video to learn more about this technique:



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=43#oembed-3>

## 25. Audience

### What this handout is about

This handout will help you understand and write for the appropriate audience when you write an academic essay.

### Audience matters

When you're in the process of writing a paper, it's easy to forget that you are actually writing to someone. Whether you've thought about it consciously or not, you always write to an audience: sometimes your audience is a very generalized group of readers, sometimes you know the individuals who compose the audience, and sometimes you write for yourself. Keeping your audience in mind while you write can help you make good decisions about what material to include, how to organize your ideas, and how best to support your argument.

To illustrate the impact of audience, imagine you're writing a letter to your grandmother to tell her about your first month of college. What details and stories might you include? What might you leave out? Now imagine that you're writing on the same topic but your audience is your best friend. Unless you have an extremely cool grandma to whom you're very close, it's likely that your two letters would look quite different in terms of content, structure, and even tone.

## Isn't my instructor my audience?

Yes, your instructor or TA is probably the actual audience for your paper. Your instructors read and grade your essays, and you want to keep their needs and perspectives in mind when you write. However, when you write an essay with only your instructor in mind, you might not say as much as you should or say it as clearly as you should, because you assume that the person grading it knows more than you do and will fill in the gaps. This leaves it up to the instructor to decide what you are really saying, and she might decide differently than you expect. For example, she might decide that those gaps show that you don't know and understand the material. Remember that time when you said to yourself, "I don't have to explain communism; my instructor knows more about that than I do" and got back a paper that said something like "Shows no understanding of communism"? That's an example of what can go awry when you think of your instructor as your only audience.

Thinking about your audience differently can improve your writing, especially in terms of how clearly you express your argument. The clearer your points are, the more likely you are to have a strong essay. Your instructor will say, "He really understands communism—he's able to explain it simply and clearly!" By treating your instructor as an intelligent but uninformed audience, you end up addressing her more effectively.

## How do I identify my audience and what they want from me?

Before you even begin the process of writing, take some time to consider who your audience is and what they want from you. Use the following questions to help you identify your audience and what you can do to address their wants and needs.

- Who is your audience?
- Might you have more than one audience? If so, how many audiences do you have? List them.
- Does your assignment itself give any clues about your audience?
- What does your audience need? What do they want? What do they value?
- What is most important to them?
- What are they least likely to care about?
- What kind of organization would best help your audience understand and appreciate your? What do you have to say (or what are you doing in your research) that might surprise your audience?
- What do you want your audience to think, learn, or assume about you? What impression do you want your writing or your research to convey?

## How much should I explain?

This is the hard part. As we said earlier, you want to show your instructor that you know the material. But different assignments call for varying degrees of information. Different fields also have different expectations. For more about what each field tends to expect from an essay, see the Writing Center handouts on writing in specific fields of study. The best place to start figuring out how much you should say about each part of your paper is in a careful reading of the assignment. We give you some tips for reading assignments and figuring them out in our handout on how to read an assignment. The assignment may specify an audience for your paper; sometimes the instructor will ask you to imagine that you are writing to your congressperson, for a professional journal, to a group of specialists in a particular field, or for a group of your peers. If the assignment doesn't specify an audience, you may find it most



useful to imagine your classmates reading the paper, rather than your instructor.

Now, knowing your imaginary audience, what other clues can you get from the assignment? If the assignment asks you to summarize something that you have read, then your reader wants you to include more examples from the text than if the assignment asks you to interpret the passage. Most assignments in college focus on argument rather than the repetition of learned information, so your reader probably doesn't want a lengthy, detailed, point-by-point summary of your reading (book reports in some classes and argument reconstructions in philosophy classes are big exceptions to this rule). If your assignment asks you to interpret or analyze the text (or an event or idea), then you want to make sure that your explanation of the material is focused and not so detailed that you end up spending more time on examples than on your analysis. If you are not sure about the difference between explaining something and analyzing it, see our handouts on reading the assignment and argument.

Once you have a draft, try your level of explanation out on a friend, a classmate, or a Writing Center tutor. Get the person to read your rough draft, and then ask her to talk to you about what she did and didn't understand. (Now is not the time to talk about proofreading stuff, so make sure she ignores those issues for the time being). You will likely get one of the following responses or a combination of them:

- If your listener/reader has **tons of questions** about what you are saying, then you probably need to explain more. Let's say you are writing a paper on piranhas, and your reader says, "What's a piranha? Why do I need to know about them? How would I identify one?" Those are vital questions that you clearly need to answer in your paper. You need more detail and elaboration.
- If your reader seems **confused**, you probably need to explain more clearly. So if he says, "Are there piranhas in the lakes

around here?” you may not need to give more examples, but rather focus on making sure your examples and points are clear.

- If your reader **looks bored and can repeat back to you more details than she needs to know** to get your point, you probably explained too much. Excessive detail can also be confusing, because it can bog the reader down and keep her from focusing on your main points. You want your reader to say, “So it seems like your paper is saying that piranhas are misunderstood creatures that are essential to South American ecosystems,” not, “Uh... piranhas are important?” or, “Well, I know you said piranhas don’t usually attack people, and they’re usually around 10 inches long, and some people keep them in aquariums as pets, and dolphins are one of their predators, and...a bunch of other stuff, I guess?”

Sometimes it’s not the amount of explanation that matters, but the word choice and tone you adopt. Your word choice and tone need to match your audience’s expectations. For example, imagine you are researching piranhas; you find an article in *National Geographic* and another one in an academic journal for scientists. How would you expect the two articles to sound? *National Geographic* is written for a popular audience; you might expect it to have sentences like “The piranha generally lives in shallow rivers and streams in South America.” The scientific journal, on the other hand, might use much more technical language, because it’s written for an audience of specialists. A sentence like “*Serrasalmus piraya* lives in fresh and brackish intercoastal and proto-arboreal sub-tropical regions between the 45th and 38th parallels” might not be out of place in the journal.

Generally, you want your reader to know enough material to understand the points you are making. It’s like the old forest/trees metaphor. If you give the reader nothing but trees, she won’t see the forest (your thesis, the reason for your paper). If you give her a big forest and no trees, she won’t know how you got to the forest (she

might say, “Your point is fine, but you haven’t proven it to me”). You want the reader to say, “Nice forest, and those trees really help me to see it.” Our handout on paragraph development can help you find a good balance of examples and explanation.

## Reading your own drafts

Writers tend to read over their own papers pretty quickly, with the knowledge of what they are trying to argue already in their minds. Reading in this way can cause you to skip over gaps in your written argument because the gap-filler is in your head. A problem occurs when your reader falls into these gaps. Your reader wants you to make the necessary connections from one thought or sentence to the next. When you don’t, the reader can become confused or frustrated. Think about when you read something and you struggle to find the most important points or what the writer is trying to say. Isn’t that annoying? Doesn’t it make you want to quit reading and surf the web or call a friend?

## Putting yourself in the reader’s position

Instead of reading your draft as if you wrote it and know what you meant, try reading it as if you have no previous knowledge of the material. Have you explained enough? Are the connections clear? This can be hard to do at first. Consider using one of the following strategies:

- Take a break from your work—go work out, take a nap, take a day off. This is why the Writing Center and your instructors encourage you to start writing more than a day before the paper is due. If you write the paper the night before it’s due,

you make it almost impossible to read the paper with a fresh eye.

- Try outlining after writing—after you have a draft, look at each paragraph separately. Write down the main point for each paragraph on a separate sheet of paper, in the order you have put them. Then look at your “outline”—does it reflect what you meant to say, in a logical order? Are some paragraphs hard to reduce to one point? Why? This technique will help you find places where you may have confused your reader by straying from your original plan for the paper.
- Read the paper aloud—we do this all the time at the Writing Center, and once you get used to it, you’ll see that it helps you slow down and really consider how your reader experiences your text. It will also help you catch a lot of sentence-level errors, such as misspellings and missing words, which can make it difficult for your reader to focus on your argument.

These techniques can help you read your paper in the same way your reader will and make revisions that help your reader understand your argument. Then, when your instructor finally reads your finished draft, he or she won’t have to fill in any gaps. The more work you do, the less work your audience will have to do—and the more likely it is that your instructor will follow and understand your argument.

# 26. Thesis Statements

## What this handout is about

This handout describes what a thesis statement is, how thesis statements work in your writing, and how you can discover or refine one for your draft.

## Introduction

Writing in college often takes the form of persuasion—convincing others that you have an interesting, logical point of view on the subject you are studying. Persuasion is a skill you practice regularly in your daily life. You persuade your roommate to clean up, your parents to let you borrow the car, your friend to vote for your favorite candidate or policy. In college, course assignments often ask you to make a persuasive case in writing. You are asked to convince your reader of your point of view. This form of persuasion, often called academic argument, follows a predictable pattern in writing. After a brief introduction of your topic, you state your point of view on the topic directly and often in one sentence. This sentence is the thesis statement, and it serves as a summary of the argument you'll make in the rest of your paper .

## What is a thesis statement?

### A thesis statement:

- tells the reader how you will interpret the significance of the subject matter under discussion.
- is a road map for the paper; in other words, it tells the reader what to expect from the rest of the paper.
- directly answers the question asked of you. A thesis is an interpretation of a question or subject, not the subject itself. The subject, or topic, of an essay might be World War II or Moby Dick; a thesis must then offer a way to understand the war or the novel.
- makes a claim that others might dispute.
- is usually a single sentence somewhere in your first paragraph that presents your argument to the reader. The rest of the paper, the body of the essay, gathers and organizes evidence that will persuade the reader of the logic of your interpretation.

If your assignment asks you to take a position or develop a claim about a subject, you may need to convey that position or claim in a thesis statement near the beginning of your draft. The assignment may not explicitly state that you need a thesis statement because your instructor may assume you will include one. When in doubt, ask your instructor if the assignment requires a thesis statement. When an assignment asks you to analyze, to interpret, to compare and contrast, to demonstrate cause and effect, or to take a stand on an issue, it is likely that you are being asked to develop a thesis and to support it persuasively. (Check out our handout on understanding assignments for more information.)

## How do I get a thesis?

A thesis is the result of a lengthy thinking process. Formulating a thesis is not the first thing you do after reading an essay assignment. Before you develop an argument on any topic, you have to collect and organize evidence, look for possible relationships between known facts (such as surprising contrasts or similarities), and think about the significance of these relationships. Once you do this thinking, you will probably have a “working thesis,” a basic or main idea, an argument that you think you can support with evidence but that may need adjustment along the way.

Writers use all kinds of techniques to stimulate their thinking and to help them clarify relationships or comprehend the broader significance of a topic and arrive at a thesis statement. For more ideas on how to get started, see our handout on brainstorming.

## How do I know if my thesis is strong?

If there's time, run it by your instructor or make an appointment at the Writing Center to get some feedback. Even if you do not have time to get advice elsewhere, you can do some thesis evaluation of your own. When reviewing your first draft and its working thesis, ask yourself the following:

- *Do I answer the question?* Re-reading the question prompt after constructing a working thesis can help you fix an argument that misses the focus of the question.
- *Have I taken a position that others might challenge or oppose?* If your thesis simply states facts that no one would, or even could, disagree with, it's possible that you are simply providing a summary, rather than making an argument.
- *Is my thesis statement specific enough?*

Thesis statements that are too vague often do not have a strong argument. If your thesis contains words like “good” or “successful,” see if you could be more specific: *why* is something “good”; *what specifically* makes something “successful”?

- Does my thesis pass the “So what?” test? If a reader’s first response is, “So what?” then you need to clarify, to forge a relationship, or to connect to a larger issue.
- Does my essay support my thesis specifically and without wandering? If your thesis and the body of your essay do not seem to go together, one of them has to change. It’s o.k. to change your working thesis to reflect things you have figured out in the course of writing your paper. Remember, always reassess and revise your writing as necessary.
- Does my thesis pass the “how and why?” test? If a reader’s first response is “how?” or “why?” your thesis may be too open-ended and lack guidance for the reader. See what you can add to give the reader a better take on your position right from the beginning.

## Examples

Suppose you are taking a course on 19th-century America, and the instructor hands out the following essay assignment: Compare and contrast the reasons why the North and South fought the Civil War. You turn on the computer and type out the following:

*The North and South fought the Civil War for many reasons, some of which were the same and some different.*

This weak thesis restates the question without providing any additional information. You will expand on this new information in the body of the essay, but it is important that the reader know where you are heading. A reader of this weak thesis might think, “What reasons? How are they the same? How are they different?”



Ask yourself these same questions and begin to compare Northern and Southern attitudes (perhaps you first think, “The South believed slavery was right, and the North thought slavery was wrong”). Now, push your comparison toward an interpretation—why did one side think slavery was right and the other side think it was wrong? You look again at the evidence, and you decide that you are going to argue that the North believed slavery was immoral while the South believed it upheld the Southern way of life. You write:

*While both sides fought the Civil War over the issue of slavery, the North fought for moral reasons while the South fought to preserve its own institutions.*

Now you have a working thesis! Included in this working thesis is a reason for the war and some idea of how the two sides disagreed over this reason. As you write the essay, you will probably begin to characterize these differences more precisely, and your working thesis may start to seem too vague. Maybe you decide that both sides fought for moral reasons, and that they just focused on different moral issues. You end up revising the working thesis into a final thesis that really captures the argument in your paper:

*While both Northerners and Southerners believed they fought against tyranny and oppression, Northerners focused on the oppression of slaves while Southerners defended their own right to self-government.*

Compare this to the original weak thesis. This final thesis presents a way of *interpreting* evidence that illuminates the significance of the question. *Keep in mind that this is one of many possible interpretations of the Civil War—it is not the one and only right answer to the question.* There isn’t one right answer; there are only strong and weak thesis statements and strong and weak uses of evidence.

Let’s look at another example. Suppose your literature professor hands out the following assignment in a class on the American novel: Write an analysis of some aspect of Mark Twain’s novel *Huckleberry Finn*. “This will be easy,” you think. “I loved *Huckleberry Finn*!” You grab a pad of paper and write:

*Mark Twain's Huckleberry Finn is a great American novel.*

Why is this thesis weak? Think about what the reader would expect from the essay that follows: you will most likely provide a general, appreciative summary of Twain's novel. The question did not ask you to summarize; it asked you to analyze. Your professor is probably not interested in your opinion of the novel; instead, she wants you to think about *why* it's such a great novel— what do Huck's adventures tell us about life, about America, about coming of age, about race relations, etc.? First, the question asks you to pick an aspect of the novel that you think is important to its structure or meaning—for example, the role of storytelling, the contrasting scenes between the shore and the river, or the relationships between adults and children. Now you write:

*In Huckleberry Finn, Mark Twain develops a contrast between life on the river and life on the shore.*

Here's a working thesis with potential: you have highlighted an important aspect of the novel for investigation; however, it's still not clear what your analysis will reveal. Your reader is intrigued, but is still thinking, "So what? What's the point of this contrast? What does it signify?" Perhaps you are not sure yet, either. That's fine—begin to work on comparing scenes from the book and see what you discover. Free write, make lists, jot down Huck's actions and reactions. Eventually you will be able to clarify for yourself, and then for the reader, why this contrast matters. After examining the evidence and considering your own insights, you write:

*Through its contrasting river and shore scenes, Twain's Huckleberry Finn suggests that to find the true expression of American democratic ideals, one must leave "civilized" society and go back to nature.*

This final thesis statement presents an interpretation of a literary work based on an analysis of its content. Of course, for the essay itself to be successful, you must now present evidence from the novel that will convince the reader of your interpretation.

## Works consulted

We consulted these works while writing the original version of this handout. This is not a comprehensive list of resources on the handout's topic, and we encourage you to do your own research to find the latest publications on this topic. Please do not use this list as a model for the format of your own reference list, as it may not match the citation style you are using. For guidance on formatting citations, please see the UNC Libraries citation tutorial.

Anson, Chris M. and Robert A. Schwegler. *The Longman Handbook for Writers*. 2nd ed. New York: Longman, 2000.

Hairston, Maxine and John J. Ruskiewicz. *The Scott, Foresman Handbook for Writers*. 4th ed. New York: HarperCollins, 1996.

Lunsford, Andrea and Robert Connors. *The St. Martin's Handbook*. 3rd ed. New York: St. Martin's, 1995.

Rosen, Leonard J. and Laurence Behrens. *The Allyn & Bacon Handbook*. 3rd ed. Boston: Allyn & Bacon, 1997.

## 27. Organizing an Essay

There are many elements that must come together to create a good essay. The topic should be clear and interesting. The author's voice should come through, but not be a distraction. There should be no errors in grammar, spelling, punctuation, or capitalization. Organization is one of the most important elements of an essay that is often overlooked. An organized essay is clear, focused, logical and effective.

Organization makes it easier to understand the thesis. To illustrate, imagine putting together a bike. Having all of the necessary tools, parts, and directions will make the job easier to complete than if the parts are spread across the room and the tools are located all over the house. The same logic applies to writing an essay. When all the parts of an essay are in some sort of order, it is both easier for the writer to put the essay together and for the reader to understand the main ideas presented in the essay.

Although organization makes tasks easier to complete, there is not just one way of organizing. For example, there are hundreds of ways to organize a kitchen. The glasses

Photo of a white kitchen lit with windows. Rows of glass jars line shelves over the countertop, and a hanging rack of pans and pots appears beneath that.

can go in the cupboard to the right of the sink or to the left of it. The silverware can be placed in any number of drawers. Pots and pans can be hung on hooks over the island in the center of the kitchen or hidden in cupboard space beneath the counter. It does not matter as much where these items are placed, but that they are organized in a logical manner. Essays, like kitchens, can also be organized in different ways. There are three common strategies; however, it is important to note that these are broad categories. Variations of

these strategies can be used, and they may be combined with one another.<sup>1</sup>

### *Strategy 1. Reverse Outlining*

If your paper is about Huckleberry Finn, a working thesis might be: “In Huckleberry Finn, Mark Twain develops a contrast between life on the river and life on the shore.” However, you might feel uncertain if your paper really follows through on the thesis as promised.

This paper may benefit from reverse outlining. Your aim is to create an outline of what you’ve already written, as opposed to the kind of outline that you make before you begin to write. The reverse outline will help you evaluate the strengths and weaknesses of both your organization and your argument.

#### **Read the draft and take notes**

Read your draft over, and as you do so, make very brief notes in the margin about what each paragraph is trying to accomplish.

#### **Outline the Draft**

After you’ve read through the entire draft, transfer the brief notes to a fresh sheet of paper, listing them in the order in which they appear. The outline might look like this:

- Paragraph 1: Intro
- Paragraph 2: Background on Huck Finn
- Paragraph 3: River for Huck and Jim
- Paragraph 4: Shore and laws for Huck and Jim
- Paragraph 5: Shore and family, school
- Paragraph 6: River and freedom, democracy

## 1. Organizing an Essay

- Paragraph 7: River and shore similarities
- Paragraph 8: Conclusion

### **Examine the Outline**

Look for repetition and other organizational problems. In the reverse outline above, there's a problem somewhere in Paragraphs 3-7, where the potential for repetition is high because you keep moving back and forth between river and shore.

### **Re-examine the Thesis, the Outline, and the Draft Together**

Look closely at the outline and see how well it supports the argument in your thesis statement. You should be able to see which paragraphs need rewriting, reordering or rejecting. You may find some paragraphs are tangential or irrelevant or that some paragraphs have more than one idea and need to be separated.

## *Strategy 2. Talk It Out*

If your paper is about President Roosevelt's New Deal, and your working thesis is: "The New Deal was actually a conservative defense of American capitalism." This strategy forces to explain your thinking to someone else.

**Find a Friend, your T.A., your Professor, a relative, a Writing Center tutor, or any sympathetic and intelligent listener.**

People are more accustomed to talking than writing, so it might be beneficial to explain your thinking out loud to someone before organizing the essay. Talking to someone about your ideas may also relieve pressure and anxiety about your topic.

### **Explain What Your Paper Is About**

Pay attention to how you explain your argument verbally. It is likely that the order in which you present your ideas and evidence to

your listener is a logical way to arrange them in your paper. Let's say that you begin (as you did above) with the working thesis. As you continue to explain, you realize that even though your draft doesn't mention "private enterprise" until the last two paragraphs, you begin to talk about it right away. This fact should tell you that you probably need to discuss private enterprise near the beginning.

### **Take Notes**

You and your listener should keep track of the way you explain your paper. If you don't, you probably won't remember what you've talked about. Compare the structure of the argument in the notes to the structure of the draft you've written.

### **Get Your Listener to Ask Questions**

As the writer, it is in your interest to receive constructive criticism so that your draft will become stronger. You want your listener to say things like, "Would you mind explaining that point about being both conservative and liberal again? I wasn't sure I followed" or "What kind of economic principle is government relief? Do you consider it a good or bad thing?" Questions you can't answer may signal an unnecessary tangent or an area needing further development in the draft. Questions you need to think about will probably make you realize that you need to explain more your paper. In short, you want to know if your listener fully understands you; if not, chances are your readers won't, either.<sup>2</sup>

## *Strategy 3. Paragraphs*

Readers need paragraph breaks in order to organize their reading. Writers need paragraph breaks to organize their writing. A paragraph break indicates a change in focus, topic, specificity, point

## 2. Reorganizing Your Draft

of view, or rhetorical strategy. The paragraph should have one main idea; the topic sentence expresses this idea. The paragraph should be organized either spatially, chronologically, or logically. The movement may be from general to specific, specific to general, or general to specific to general. All paragraphs must contain developed ideas: comparisons, examples, explanations, definitions, causes, effects, processes, or descriptions. There are several concluding strategies which may be combined or used singly, depending on the assignment's length and purpose:

- a summary of the main points
- a hook and return to the introductory “attention-getter” to frame the essay
- a web conclusion which relates the topic to a larger context of a greater significance
- a proposal calling for action or further examination of the topic
- a question which provokes the reader
- a quote
- a vivid image or compelling narrative<sup>3</sup>

### **Put Paragraphs into Sections**

You should be able to group your paragraphs so that they make a particular point or argument that supports your thesis. If any paragraph, besides the introduction or conclusion, cannot fit into any section, you may have to ask yourself whether it belongs in the essay.

#### **Re-examine each Section**

Assuming you have more than one paragraph under each section, try to distinguish between them. Perhaps you have two arguments in favor of that can be distinguished from each other by author,

## **3. Parts of an Essay**



logic, ethical principles invoked, etc. Write down the distinctions — they will help you formulate clear topic sentences.

***Re-examine the Entire Argument***

Which section do you want to appear first? Why? Which Second? Why? In what order should the paragraphs appear in each section? Look for an order that makes the strongest possible argument.<sup>4</sup>

## 4. Reorganizing Your Draft

## 28. Creating Paragraphs

A paragraph is a self-contained portion of your argument. Paragraphs will begin by making a claim that connects back to your thesis. The body of the paragraph will present the evidence, reasoning and conclusions that prove that claim. Usually, paragraphs will end by connecting their claim to the larger argument or by setting up the claim that the next paragraph will contain.

### How Many Paragraphs Do You Need?

There is no set number for how many paragraphs a paper should have. You will need one for an introduction and one for a conclusion, but after that the number can vary. However, you will need one paragraph for every claim that makes up your argument.

Paragraphs should be used to develop one idea at a time rather than contain many different ideas and claims. If you have a lot of ideas and claims to address, you may be tempted to combine related claims into the same paragraph. Combining different points in the same paragraph cuts down on how much space you have to argue each point. This will divide your reader's attention and make your argument less thorough.

By dedicating each paragraph to only one part of your argument, you will give the reader time to fully evaluate and understand each claim before going on to the next one. Think of paragraphs as a way of guiding your reader's attention – by giving them a single topic, you force them to focus on it. When you direct their focus, they will have a much easier time following your argument.

Some writing manuals will direct you to have one paragraph for every point made in your thesis. The general idea behind this rule is a good one – you need to address every point, and you will need

at least a paragraph for each. However, do not feel like you can only devote one paragraph to each point. If your argument is complex, you may need to have subsections for each of your main points. Each one of those supporting points should be its own paragraph.

## Using Topic Sentences

Every paragraph of argument should begin with a topic sentence that tells the reader what the paragraph will prove. By providing the reader with expectations at the start of the paragraph, you help them understand where you are going and how the paragraph fits in with the overall structure of your argument. Topic sentences should always connect back to your thesis statement – if you cannot find a way to describe a paragraph in relation to your thesis, you probably do not need it for your argument.

## Creating Good Paragraphs

If the thesis contains multiple points or assertions, each body paragraph should support or justify them, preferably in the order the assertions were originally stated in the thesis. Thus, the topic sentence for the first body paragraph will refer to the first point in the thesis sentence and the topic sentence for the second body paragraph will refer to the second point in the thesis sentence. Each body paragraph is something like a miniature essay in that they each need an introductory sentence that makes an important and interesting argument, and that they each need a good closing sentence in order to produce a smooth transition between one point and the next. Transitions from one argument to the next, as well as within paragraphs, are important to add coherence to your paper.



# 29. Paragraphs

## What this handout is about

This handout will help you understand how paragraphs are formed, how to develop stronger paragraphs, and how to completely and clearly express your ideas.

## What is a paragraph?

Paragraphs are the building blocks of papers. Many students define paragraphs in terms of length: a paragraph is a group of at least five sentences, a paragraph is half a page long, etc. In reality, though, the unity and coherence of ideas among sentences is what constitutes a paragraph. A paragraph is defined as “a group of sentences or a single sentence that forms a unit” (Lunsford and Connors 116). Length and appearance do not determine whether a section in a paper is a paragraph. For instance, in some styles of writing, particularly journalistic styles, a paragraph can be just one sentence long. Ultimately, a paragraph is a sentence or group of sentences that support one main idea. In this handout, we will refer to this as the “controlling idea,” because it controls what happens in the rest of the paragraph.

## How do I decide what to put in a paragraph?

Before you can begin to determine what the composition of a particular paragraph will be, you must first decide on a working

thesis for your paper. What is the most important idea that you are trying to convey to your reader? The information in each paragraph must be related to that idea. In other words, your paragraphs should remind your reader that there is a recurrent relationship between your thesis and the information in each paragraph. A working thesis functions like a seed from which your paper, and your ideas, will grow. The whole process is an organic one—a natural progression from a seed to a full-blown paper where there are direct, familial relationships between all of the ideas in the paper.

The decision about what to put into your paragraphs begins with the germination of a seed of ideas; this “germination process” is better known as brainstorming. There are many techniques for brainstorming; whichever one you choose, this stage of paragraph development cannot be skipped. Building paragraphs can be like building a skyscraper: there must be a well-planned foundation that supports what you are building. Any cracks, inconsistencies, or other corruptions of the foundation can cause your whole paper to crumble.

So, let’s suppose that you have done some brainstorming to develop your thesis. What else should you keep in mind as you begin to create paragraphs? Every paragraph in a paper should be

- **Unified**—All of the sentences in a single paragraph should be related to a single controlling idea (often expressed in the topic sentence of the paragraph).
- **Clearly related to the thesis**—The sentences should all refer to the central idea, or thesis, of the paper (Rosen and Behrens 119).
- **Coherent**—The sentences should be arranged in a logical manner and should follow a definite plan for development (Rosen and Behrens 119).
- **Well-developed**—Every idea discussed in the paragraph should be adequately explained and supported through evidence and details that work together to explain the paragraph’s controlling idea (Rosen and Behrens 119).

## How do I organize a paragraph?

There are many different ways to organize a paragraph. The organization you choose will depend on the controlling idea of the paragraph. Below are a few possibilities for organization, with brief examples.

- **Narration:** Tell a story. Go chronologically, from start to finish. (See an example.)
- **Description:** Provide specific details about what something looks, smells, tastes, sounds, or feels like. Organize spatially, in order of appearance, or by topic. (See an example.)
- **Process:** Explain how something works, step by step. Perhaps follow a sequence—first, second, third. (See an example.)
- **Classification:** Separate into groups or explain the various parts of a topic. (See an example.)
- **Illustration:** Give examples and explain how those examples prove your point. (See the detailed example in the next section of this handout.)

## 5-step process to paragraph development

Let's walk through a 5-step process to building a paragraph. Each step of the process will include an explanation of the step and a bit of “model” text to illustrate how the step works. Our finished model paragraph will be about slave spirituals, the original songs that African Americans created during slavery. The model paragraph uses illustration (giving examples) to prove its point.

## Step 1. Decide on a controlling idea and create a topic sentence

Paragraph development begins with the formulation of the controlling idea. This idea directs the paragraph's development. Often, the controlling idea of a paragraph will appear in the form of a topic sentence. In some cases, you may need more than one sentence to express a paragraph's controlling idea. Here is the controlling idea for our "model paragraph," expressed in a topic sentence:

**Model controlling idea and topic sentence**— *Slave spirituals often had hidden double meanings.*

## Step 2. Explain the controlling idea

Paragraph development continues with an expression of the rationale or the explanation that the writer gives for how the reader should interpret the information presented in the idea statement or topic sentence of the paragraph. The writer explains his/her thinking about the main topic, idea, or focus of the paragraph. Here's the sentence that would follow the controlling idea about slave spirituals:

**Model explanation**—*On one level, spirituals referenced heaven, Jesus, and the soul; but on another level, the songs spoke about slave resistance.*

## Step 3. Give an example (or multiple examples)

Paragraph development progresses with the expression of some type of support or evidence for the idea and the explanation that



came before it. The example serves as a sign or representation of the relationship established in the idea and explanation portions of the paragraph. Here are two examples that we could use to illustrate the double meanings in slave spirituals:

**Model example A**— *For example, according to Frederick Douglass, the song “O Canaan, Sweet Canaan” spoke of slaves’ longing for heaven, but it also expressed their desire to escape to the North. Careful listeners heard this second meaning in the following lyrics: “I don’t expect to stay / Much longer here. / Run to Jesus, shun the danger. / I don’t expect to stay.”*

**Model example B**— *Slaves even used songs like “Steal Away to Jesus (at midnight)” to announce to other slaves the time and place of secret, forbidden meetings.*

## Step 4. Explain the example(s)

The next movement in paragraph development is an explanation of each example and its relevance to the topic sentence and rationale that were stated at the beginning of the paragraph. This explanation shows readers why you chose to use this/or these particular examples as evidence to support the major claim, or focus, in your paragraph.

Continue the pattern of giving examples and explaining them until all points/examples that the writer deems necessary have been made and explained. NONE of your examples should be left unexplained. You might be able to explain the relationship between the example and the topic sentence in the same sentence which introduced the example. More often, however, you will need to explain that relationship in a separate sentence. Look at these explanations for the two examples in the slave spirituals paragraph:

**Model explanation for example A**— *When slaves sang this song, they could have been speaking of their departure from this life and*

*their arrival in heaven; however, they also could have been describing their plans to leave the South and run, not to Jesus, but to the North.*

**Model explanation for example B**—*[The relationship between example B and the main idea of the paragraph's controlling idea is clear enough without adding another sentence to explain it.]*

## Step 5. Complete the paragraph's idea or transition into the next paragraph

The final movement in paragraph development involves tying up the loose ends of the paragraph and reminding the reader of the relevance of the information in this paragraph to the main or controlling idea of the paper. At this point, you can remind your reader about the relevance of the information that you just discussed in the paragraph. You might feel more comfortable, however, simply transitioning your reader to the next development in the next paragraph. Here's an example of a sentence that completes the slave spirituals paragraph:

**Model sentence for completing a paragraph**— *What whites heard as merely spiritual songs, slaves discerned as detailed messages. The hidden meanings in spirituals allowed slaves to sing what they could not say.*

**Notice that the example and explanation steps of this 5-step process (steps 3 and 4) can be repeated as needed. The idea is that you continue to use this pattern until you have completely developed the main idea of the paragraph.**

**Here is a look at the completed “model” paragraph:**

*Slave spirituals often had hidden double meanings. On one level, spirituals referenced heaven, Jesus, and the soul, but on another level, the songs spoke about slave resistance. For example, according to Frederick Douglass, the song “O Canaan, Sweet Canaan” spoke of slaves’ longing for heaven, but it also expressed their desire to escape to the North. Careful listeners heard this second meaning in the*

following lyrics: “I don’t expect to stay / Much longer here. / Run to Jesus, shun the danger. / I don’t expect to stay.” When slaves sang this song, they could have been speaking of their departure from this life and their arrival in heaven; however, they also could have been describing their plans to leave the South and run, not to Jesus, but to the North. Slaves even used songs like “Steal Away to Jesus (at midnight)” to announce to other slaves the time and place of secret, forbidden meetings. What whites heard as merely spiritual songs, slaves discerned as detailed messages. The hidden meanings in spirituals allowed slaves to sing what they could not say.

## Troubleshooting paragraphs

**1) Problem: the paragraph has no topic sentence.** Imagine each paragraph as a sandwich. The real content of the sandwich—the meat or other filling—is in the middle. It includes all the evidence you need to make the point. But it gets kind of messy to eat a sandwich without any bread. Your readers don’t know what to do with all the evidence you’ve given them. So, the top slice of bread (the first sentence of the paragraph) explains the topic (or controlling idea) of the paragraph. And, the bottom slice (the last sentence of the paragraph) tells the reader how the paragraph relates to the broader argument. In the original and revised paragraphs below, notice how a topic sentence expressing the controlling idea tells the reader the point of all the evidence.

### **Original paragraph**

*Piranhas rarely feed on large animals; they eat smaller fish and aquatic plants. When confronted with humans, piranhas’ first instinct is to flee, not attack. Their fear of humans makes sense. Far more piranhas are eaten by people than people are eaten by piranhas. If the fish are well-fed, they won’t bite humans.*

### **Revised paragraph**

*Although most people consider piranhas to be quite dangerous, they are, for the most part, entirely harmless. Piranhas rarely feed on large animals; they eat smaller fish and aquatic plants. When confronted with humans, piranhas' first instinct is to flee, not attack. Their fear of humans makes sense. Far more piranhas are eaten by people than people are eaten by piranhas. If the fish are well-fed, they won't bite humans.*

Once you have mastered the use of topic sentences, you may decide that the topic sentence for a particular paragraph really shouldn't be the first sentence of the paragraph. This is fine—the topic sentence can actually go at the beginning, middle, or end of a paragraph; what's important is that it is in there somewhere so that readers know what the main idea of the paragraph is and how it relates back to the thesis of your paper. Suppose that we wanted to start the piranha paragraph with a transition sentence—something that reminds the reader of what happened in the previous paragraph—rather than with the topic sentence. Let's suppose that the previous paragraph was about all kinds of animals that people are afraid of, like sharks, snakes, and spiders. Our paragraph might look like this (the topic sentence is underlined):

*Like sharks, snakes, and spiders, piranhas are widely feared. Although most people consider piranhas to be quite dangerous, they are, for the most part, entirely harmless. Piranhas rarely feed on large animals; they eat smaller fish and aquatic plants. When confronted with humans, piranhas' first instinct is to flee, not attack. Their fear of humans makes sense. Far more piranhas are eaten by people than people are eaten by piranhas. If the fish are well-fed, they won't bite humans.*

**2) Problem: the paragraph has more than one controlling idea.**

If a paragraph has more than one main idea, consider eliminating sentences that relate to the second idea, or split the paragraph into two or more paragraphs, each with only one main idea. In the following paragraph, the final two sentences branch off into a different topic; so, the revised paragraph eliminates them and

concludes with a sentence that reminds the reader of the paragraph's main idea.

### **Original paragraph**

Although most people consider piranhas to be quite dangerous, they are, for the most part, entirely harmless. Piranhas rarely feed on large animals; they eat smaller fish and aquatic plants. When confronted with humans, piranhas' first instinct is to flee, not attack. Their fear of humans makes sense. Far more piranhas are eaten by people than people are eaten by piranhas. ~~A number of South American groups eat piranhas. They fry or grill the fish and then serve them with coconut milk or tucupi, a sauce made from fermented manioc juices.~~

### **Revised paragraph**

Although most people consider piranhas to be quite dangerous, they are, for the most part, entirely harmless. Piranhas rarely feed on large animals; they eat smaller fish and aquatic plants. When confronted with humans, piranhas' first instinct is to flee, not attack. Their fear of humans makes sense. Far more piranhas are eaten by people than people are eaten by piranhas. *If the fish are well-fed, they won't bite humans.*

**3) Problem: transitions are needed within the paragraph.** You are probably familiar with the idea that transitions may be needed between paragraphs or sections in a paper (see our handout on this subject). Sometimes they are also helpful within the body of a single paragraph. Within a paragraph, transitions are often single words or short phrases that help to establish relationships between ideas and to create a logical progression of those ideas in a paragraph. This is especially likely to be true within paragraphs that discuss multiple examples. Let's take a look at a version of our piranha paragraph that uses transitions to orient the reader:

*Although most people consider piranhas to be quite dangerous, they are, except in two main situations, entirely harmless. Piranhas rarely feed on large animals; they eat smaller fish and aquatic plants. When confronted with humans, piranhas' instinct is to flee, not attack. But there are two situations in which a piranha bite is likely. The first is*

when a frightened piranha is lifted out of the water—for example, if it has been caught in a fishing net. The second is when the water level in pools where piranhas are living falls too low. A large number of fish may be trapped in a single pool, and if they are hungry, they may attack anything that enters the water.

In this example, you can see how the phrases “the first” and “the second” help the reader follow the organization of the ideas in the paragraph.

## Works consulted

We consulted these works while writing the original version of this handout. This is not a comprehensive list of resources on the handout’s topic, and we encourage you to do your own research to find the latest publications on this topic. Please do not use this list as a model for the format of your own reference list, as it may not match the citation style you are using. For guidance on formatting citations, please see the UNC Libraries citation tutorial.

Lunsford, Andrea and Robert Collins. *The St. Martin’s Handbook, Annotated Instructor’s Edition*. 5th Ed. New York: St. Martin’s, 2003.

Rosen, Leonard and Laurence Behrens. *The Allyn and Bacon Handbook, Annotated Instructor’s Edition*. 4th Ed. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2000.

# 30. Conclusions

## What this handout is about

This handout will explain the functions of conclusions, offer strategies for writing effective ones, help you evaluate your drafted conclusions, and suggest conclusion strategies to avoid.

## About conclusions

Introductions and conclusions can be the most difficult parts of papers to write. While the body is often easier to write, it needs a frame around it. An introduction and conclusion frame your thoughts and bridge your ideas for the reader.

Just as your introduction acts as a bridge that transports your readers from their own lives into the “place” of your analysis, your conclusion can provide a bridge to help your readers make the transition back to their daily lives. Such a conclusion will help them see why all your analysis and information should matter to them after they put the paper down.

Your conclusion is your chance to have the last word on the subject. The conclusion allows you to have the final say on the issues you have raised in your paper, to summarize your thoughts, to demonstrate the importance of your ideas, and to propel your reader to a new view of the subject. It is also your opportunity to make a good final impression and to end on a positive note.

Your conclusion can go beyond the confines of the assignment. The conclusion pushes beyond the boundaries of the prompt and allows you to consider broader issues, make new connections, and elaborate on the significance of your findings.

Your conclusion should make your readers glad they read your paper. Your conclusion gives your reader something to take away that will help them see things differently or appreciate your topic in personally relevant ways. It can suggest broader implications that will not only interest your reader, but also enrich your reader's life in some way. It is your gift to the reader.

## Strategies for writing an effective conclusion

One or more of the following strategies may help you write an effective conclusion.

- Play the “So What” Game. If you're stuck and feel like your conclusion isn't saying anything new or interesting, ask a friend to read it with you. Whenever you make a statement from your conclusion, ask the friend to say, “So what?” or “Why should anybody care?” Then ponder that question and answer it. Here's how it might go:

You: *Basically, I'm just saying that education was important to Douglass.*

Friend: *So what?*

You: *Well, it was important because it was a key to him feeling like a free and equal citizen.*

Friend: *Why should anybody care?*

You: *That's important because plantation owners tried to keep slaves from being educated so that they could maintain control. When Douglass obtained an education, he undermined that control personally.*

You can also use this strategy on your own, asking yourself “So What?” as you develop your ideas or your draft.

- Return to the theme or themes in the introduction. This



strategy brings the reader full circle. For example, if you begin by describing a scenario, you can end with the same scenario as proof that your essay is helpful in creating a new understanding. You may also refer to the introductory paragraph by using key words or parallel concepts and images that you also used in the introduction.

- Synthesize, don't summarize: Include a brief summary of the paper's main points, but don't simply repeat things that were in your paper. Instead, show your reader how the points you made and the support and examples you used fit together. Pull it all together.
- Include a provocative insight or quotation from the research or reading you did for your paper.
- Propose a course of action, a solution to an issue, or questions for further study. This can redirect your reader's thought process and help her to apply your info and ideas to her own life or to see the broader implications.
- Point to broader implications. For example, if your paper examines the Greensboro sit-ins or another event in the Civil Rights Movement, you could point out its impact on the Civil Rights Movement as a whole. A paper about the style of writer Virginia Woolf could point to her influence on other writers or on later feminists.

## Strategies to avoid

- Beginning with an unnecessary, overused phrase such as "in conclusion," "in summary," or "in closing." Although these phrases can work in speeches, they come across as wooden and trite in writing.
- Stating the thesis for the very first time in the conclusion.
- Introducing a new idea or subtopic in your conclusion.
- Ending with a rephrased thesis statement without any

substantive changes.

- Making sentimental, emotional appeals that are out of character with the rest of an analytical paper.
- Including evidence (quotations, statistics, etc.) that should be in the body of the paper.

## Four kinds of ineffective conclusions

1. The “That’s My Story and I’m Sticking to It” Conclusion. This conclusion just restates the thesis and is usually painfully short. It does not push the ideas forward. People write this kind of conclusion when they can’t think of anything else to say. Example: In conclusion, Frederick Douglass was, as we have seen, a pioneer in American education, proving that education was a major force for social change with regard to slavery.
2. The “Sherlock Holmes” Conclusion. Sometimes writers will state the thesis for the very first time in the conclusion. You might be tempted to use this strategy if you don’t want to give everything away too early in your paper. You may think it would be more dramatic to keep the reader in the dark until the end and then “wow” him with your main idea, as in a Sherlock Holmes mystery. The reader, however, does not expect a mystery, but an analytical discussion of your topic in an academic style, with the main argument (thesis) stated up front. Example: (After a paper that lists numerous incidents from the book but never says what these incidents reveal about Douglass and his views on education): So, as the evidence above demonstrates, Douglass saw education as a way to undermine the slaveholders’ power and also an important step toward freedom.
3. The “America the Beautiful”/“I Am Woman”/“We Shall Overcome” Conclusion. This kind of conclusion usually draws

on emotion to make its appeal, but while this emotion and even sentimentality may be very heartfelt, it is usually out of character with the rest of an analytical paper. A more sophisticated commentary, rather than emotional praise, would be a more fitting tribute to the topic. Example: Because of the efforts of fine Americans like Frederick Douglass, countless others have seen the shining beacon of light that is education. His example was a torch that lit the way for others. Frederick Douglass was truly an American hero.

4. The “Grab Bag” Conclusion. This kind of conclusion includes extra information that the writer found or thought of but couldn’t integrate into the main paper. You may find it hard to leave out details that you discovered after hours of research and thought, but adding random facts and bits of evidence at the end of an otherwise-well-organized essay can just create confusion. Example: In addition to being an educational pioneer, Frederick Douglass provides an interesting case study for masculinity in the American South. He also offers historians an interesting glimpse into slave resistance when he confronts Covey, the overseer. His relationships with female relatives reveal the importance of family in the slave community.

## Works consulted

We consulted these works while writing the original version of this handout. This is not a comprehensive list of resources on the handout’s topic, and we encourage you to do your own research to find the latest publications on this topic. Please do not use this list as a model for the format of your own reference list, as it may not match the citation style you are using. For guidance on formatting citations, please see the UNC Libraries citation tutorial.

All quotations are from:

Douglass, Frederick. *Narrative of the Life of Frederick Douglass, an*

*American Slave*, edited and with introduction by Houston A. Baker, Jr., New York: Penguin Books, 1986.

Strategies for Writing a Conclusion. Literacy Education Online, St. Cloud State University. 18 May 2005 <<http://leo.stcloudstate.edu/acadwrite/conclude.html>>.

Conclusions. Nesbitt-Johnston Writing Center, Hamilton College. 17 May 2005 <<http://www.hamilton.edu/academic/Resource/WC/SampleConclusions.html>>.

## 31. Revising

### Reviewing, Editing, Proofreading, and Making an Overview

Every time you revise your work substantially, you will be conducting three distinct functions in the following order: reviewing for purpose, editing and proofreading, making a final overview.

#### Reviewing for Purpose

##### *LEARNING OBJECTIVES*

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Understand why and when to review for purpose.
- Be prepared to use self-questioning in the purpose review process.

Although you will naturally be **reviewing for purpose** throughout the entire writing process, you should read through your first complete draft once you have finished it and carefully reconsider all aspects of your essay. As you review for purpose, keep in mind that your paper has to be clear to others, not just to you. Try to read through your paper from the point of view of a member of your

targeted audience who is reading your paper for the first time. Make sure you have neither failed to clarify the points your audience will need to have clarified nor overclarified the points your audience will already completely understand.

Figure 8.1

*A vertical flowchart: The top segment is "Review for Purpose"; the middle segment is "Edit and Proofread"; and the third segment is "Make a Final Overview." The top segment, Review for Purpose, is highlighted to show the current stage.*

## Revisiting Your Statement of Purpose

**Self-questioning** is a useful tool when you are in the reviewing process. In anticipation of attaching a writer's memo to your draft as you send it out for peer or instructor review, reexamine the six elements of the triangle that made up your original statement of purpose (voice, audience, message, tone, attitude, and reception):

**Voice:** Does it sound like a real human being wrote this draft? Does my introduction project a clear sense of who I am? Honestly, would someone other than my paid instructor or assigned peer(s) read beyond the first paragraph of this essay?

**Audience:** Does my writing draw in a specific set of readers with a catchy hook? Do I address the same audience throughout the essay? If I don't, am I being intentional about shifting from one audience to another?

**Message:** Are my main points strong and clear? Do I have ample

support for each of them? Do my supporting details clearly support my main points?

**Tone:** Am I using the proper tone given my audience? Is my language too casual or not professional enough? Or is it needlessly formal and stiff sounding? Does my tone stay consistent throughout the draft?

**Attitude:** Will my organization make sense to another reader? Does my stance toward the topic stay consistent throughout the draft? If it doesn't, do I explain the cause of the transformation in my attitude?

**Reception:** Is my goal or intent for writing clear? How is this essay likely to be received? What kind of motivation, ideas, or emotions will this draft draw out of my readers? What will my readers do, think, or feel immediately after finishing this essay?

### **Handling Peer and Instructor Reviews**

In many situations, you will be required to have at least one of your peers review your essay (and you will, in turn, review at least one peer's essay). Even if you're not required to exchange drafts with a peer, it's simply essential at this point to have another pair of eyes, so find a classmate or friend and ask them to look over your draft. In other cases, your instructor may be intervening at this point with ungraded but evaluative commentary on your draft. Whatever the system, before you post or trade your draft for review, use your answers to the questions in "Reviewing for Purpose" to tweak your original statement of purpose, giving a clear statement of your desired voice, audience, message, tone, attitude, and reception. Also, consider preparing a **descriptive outline** showing how the essay actually turned out and comparing that with your original plan, or consider writing a brief narrative describing how the essay developed from idea to execution. Finally, include any other questions or concerns you have about your draft, so that your peer reader(s) or instructor can give you useful, tailored feedback. These reflective statements and documents could be attached with your draft as part of a writer's memo. Remember, the more guidance

you give your readers, regardless of whether they are your peers or your instructor, the more they will be able to help you.

When you receive suggestions for content changes from your instructors, try to put aside any tendencies to react defensively, so that you can consider their ideas for revisions with an open mind. If you are accustomed only to getting feedback from instructors that is accompanied by a grade, you may need to get used to the difference between **evaluation** and **judgment**. In college settings, instructors often prefer to intervene most extensively after you have completed a first draft, with evaluative commentary that tends to be suggestive, forward-looking, and free of a final quantitative judgment (like a grade). If you read your instructors' feedback in those circumstances as final, you can miss the point of the exercise. You're supposed to do something with this sort of commentary, not just read it as the justification for a (nonexistent) grade.

Sometimes peers think they're supposed to "sound like an English teacher" so they fall into the trap of "correcting" your draft, but in most cases, the prompts used in college-level peer reviewing discourage that sort of thing. In many situations, your peers will give you ideas that will add value to your paper, and you will want to include them. In other situations, your peers' ideas will not really work into the plan you have for your paper. It is not unusual for peers to offer ideas that you may not want to implement. Remember, your peers' ideas are only suggestions, and it is your essay, and you are the person who will make the final decisions. If your peers happen to be a part of the audience to which you are writing, they can sometimes give you invaluable ideas. And if they're not, take the initiative to find outside readers who might actually be a part of your audience.

When you are reviewing a peer's essay, keep in mind that the author likely knows more about the topic than you do, so don't question content unless you are certain of your facts. Also, do not suggest changes just because you would do it differently or because you want to give the impression that you are offering ideas. Only



suggest changes that you seriously think would make the essay stronger.

### *Key Takeaways*

- You should review for purpose while you are writing, after you finish your first draft, and after you feel your essay is nearly complete.
- Use self-questioning to evaluate your essay as you are revising the purpose. Keep your voice, audience, message, tone, attitude, and reception in mind as you write and revise.
- When you are reviewing a peers' essay, make only suggestions that you think will make the essay stronger. When you receive reviews from instructors or peers, try to be open minded and consider the value of the ideas to your essay.

### *Exercises*

1. Find multiple drafts of an essay you have recently completed. Write a descriptive outline of at least two distinct drafts you wrote during the process.
2. For a recently completed essay, discuss how at least one element of your statement of purpose (voice, audience, message, tone, attitude, or reception) changed over the course of the writing process.

3. With your writing group, develop five questions you think everyone in your class should have to answer about their essay drafts before submitting them for evaluation from a peer or your instructor.

## Editing and Proofreading

### *LEARNING OBJECTIVES*

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Understand why editing and proofreading is important even for careful writers.
- Recognize the benefits of peer editing and proofreading and the similarities between editing and proofreading your work and the work of others.
- Know how to edit and proofread for issues of both mechanics and style.

When you have made some revisions to your draft based on feedback and your recalibration of your purpose for writing, you may now feel your essay is nearly complete. However, you should plan to read through the entire final draft at least one additional time. During this stage of editing and proofreading your entire essay, you should be looking for general consistency and clarity. Also, pay particular attention to parts of the paper you have moved around or changed in

## other ways to make sure that your new versions still work smoothly.

Although you might think editing and proofreading isn't necessary since you were fairly careful when you were writing, the truth is that even the very brightest people and best writers make mistakes when they write. One of the main reasons that you are likely to make mistakes is that your mind and fingers are not always moving along at the same speed nor are they necessarily in sync. So what ends up on the page isn't always exactly what you intended. A second reason is that, as you make changes and adjustments, you might not totally match up the original parts and revised parts. Finally, a third key reason for proofreading is because you likely have errors you typically make and proofreading gives you a chance to correct those errors.

## Figure 8.2



Editing and proofreading can work well with a partner. You can offer to be another pair of eyes for peers in exchange for their doing the same for you. Whether you are editing and proofreading your work or the work of a peer, the process is basically the same. Although the rest of this section assumes you are editing and proofreading your work, you can simply shift the personal issues, such as “Am I...” to a viewpoint that will work with a peer, such as “Is she...”

As you edit and proofread, you should look for common problem

areas that stick out. There are certain writing rules that you must follow, but other more stylistic writing elements are more subjective and will require judgment calls on your part.

Be proactive in evaluating these subjective, stylistic issues since failure to do so can weaken the potential impact of your essay. Keeping the following questions in mind as you edit and proofread will help you notice and consider some of those subjective issues:

- **At the word level:** Am I using descriptive words? Am I varying my word choices rather than using the same words over and over? Am I using active verbs? Am I writing concisely? Does every word in each sentence perform a function?
- **At the sentence level:** Am I using a variety of sentence beginnings? Am I using a variety of sentence formats? Am I using ample and varied transitions? Does every sentence advance the value of the essay?
- **At the paragraph and essay level:** How does this essay look? Am I using paragraphing and paragraph breaks to my advantage? Are there opportunities to make this essay work better visually? Are the visuals I'm already using necessary? Am I using the required formatting (or, if there's room for creativity, am I using the optimal formatting)? Is my essay the proper length?

### *Key Takeaways*

- Edit and proofread your work since it is easy to make mistakes between your mind and your typing fingers, as well as when you are moving around parts of your essay.
- Trading a nearly final version of a draft with peers

is a valuable exercise since others can often more easily see your mistakes than you can. When you edit and proofread for a peer, you use the same process as when you edit and proofread for yourself.

- As you are editing and proofreading, you will encounter some issues that are either right or wrong and you simply have to correct them when they are wrong. Other more stylistic issues, such as using adequate transitions, ample descriptive words, and enough variety in sentence formats, are subjective. Besides dealing with matters of correctness, you will have to make choices about subjective and stylistic issues while you proofread.

## *Exercises*

1. Write a one-page piece about how you decided which college to attend. Give a copy of your file (or a hard copy) to three different peers to edit and proofread. Then edit and proofread your page yourself. Finally, compare your editing and proofreading results to those of your three peers. Categorize the suggested revisions and corrections as objective standards of correctness or subjective matters of style.
2. Create a “personal editing and proofreading guide” that includes an overview of both objective and subjective issues covered in this book that are

common problems for you in your writing. In your guide, include tips from this book and self-questions that can help you with your problem writing areas.

## Making a Final Overview

### *LEARNING OBJECTIVES*

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Understand the types of problems that might recur throughout your work.
- Know when you should conduct isolated checks during a final overview.
- Understand how to conduct isolated checks.



While you are managing the content of your essay and moving things around in it, you are likely to notice isolated issues that could recur throughout your work. To verify that these issues are satisfactorily dealt with from the beginning to the end of your essay, make a checklist of the issues as you go along. Conduct isolated checks of the whole paper after you are finished editing and proofreading. You might conduct some checks by flipping through the

hard-copy pages, some by clicking through the pages on your computer, and some by conducting “computer finds” (good for cases when you want to make sure you’ve used the same proper noun correctly and consistently). Remember to take advantage of all the editing features of the word processing program you’re using, such as spell check and grammar check. In most versions of Word, for instance, you’ll see red squiggly lines underneath misspelled words and green

squiggly lines underneath  
misuses of grammar. Right  
click on those underlined  
words to examine your  
options for revision.

Figure 8.3



The following checklist shows examples of the types of things that you might look for as you make a final pass (or final passes) through your paper. It often works best to make a separate pass for each issue because you are less likely to miss an issue and you will probably be able to make multiple, single-issue passes more quickly than you can make one multiple-issue pass.

- All subheadings are placed correctly (such as in the center or at the beginning of a page).
- All the text is the same size and font throughout.
- The page numbers are all formatted and appearing as intended.
- All image and picture captions are appearing correctly.
- All spellings of proper nouns have been corrected.
- The words “there” and “their” and “they’re” are spelled correctly. (Or you can insert your top recurring error here.)
- References are all included in the citation list.
- Within the citation list, references are all in a single, required format (no moving back and forth between Modern Language Association [MLA] and American Psychological Association [APA], for instance).
- All the formatting conventions for the final manuscript follow the style sheet assigned by the instructor (e.g., MLA, APA, Chicago Manual of Style [CMS], or other).

This isn’t intended to be an all-inclusive checklist. Rather, it simply gives you an idea of the types of things for which you might look as you conduct your final check. You should develop your unique list that might or might not include these same items.

### *Key Takeaways*

- Often a good way to make sure you do not miss any details you want to change is to make a separate pass through your essay for each area of concern. You can conduct passes by flipping through hard copies, clicking through pages on a computer, or using the “find” feature on a computer.

- You should conduct a final overview with isolated checks after you are finished editing and proofreading the final draft.
- As you are writing, make a checklist of recurring isolated issues that you notice in your work. Use this list to conduct isolated checks on the final draft of your paper.

## *Exercise*

Complete each sentence to create a logical item for a list to use for a final isolated check. Do not use any of the examples given in the text.

1. All the subheadings are...
2. The spacing between paragraphs...
3. Each page includes...
4. I have correctly spelled...
5. The photos are all placed...
6. The words in the flow charts and diagrams...

## 32. Editing and Proofreading

When revising written work within a writing community, it is a good idea to visualize the process and workflow before you get started in earnest. While revision is a recursive (circling back) practice and writers frequently move back and forth between editorial stages, the flowchart below is designed to help you follow and appreciate the general progression of revision.

EditingProofing\_Process

### Revising After Writing Community Feedback

After submitting and receiving your peer reviews in your writing community, return to your own work and take a long, hard look at the recommendations your instructor and classmates have made regarding your draft. Remember that you are seeking ways to make the meaning clear in your essay. Do not be afraid of changing the essay in radical ways, especially if the ideas and organization haven't conveyed the meaning you intended. Build on the strengths and add, cut, reorder, or start over where needed.

### Use a Writing Rubric

After you have incorporated some of the recommendations into your revision, review the 6+1 Traits Rubric, which features the five areas (below) by which the final draft of your essay will be graded. Make sure that you are fully editing and proofreading your draft.

By *editing*, you are reviewing and revising the big picture items:

### **1. Ideas—Are my ideas and content developed?**

You are looking for ideas to be clear and focused, remaining on topic throughout the essay. Make sure your details support the central focus of the narrative.

### **2. Organization—Does my essay provide a logical organization, demonstrating an order or structure that supports the ideas clearly?**

Give your narrative a creative title and provide an inviting introduction. Craft thoughtful transitions as the the essay progresses, making sure that the structure is logical.

### **3. Word Choice—Have I provided language that sounds natural and conveys the intended message of the essay?**

Your essay should flow naturally from your own choice of words and phrases. Use action verbs and avoid linking verbs. Don't forget to read aloud to see if your voice comes through in this essay.

### **4. Sentence Fluency—Are my sentences well-built, demonstrating a strong sense of varied structure?**

One quick editing technique you can use to test for fluency is to circle the first word of every sentence. Do you see initial words repeating? Do you start sentences with articles (a, an, the) or with pronouns (or names of characters)? If so, try to incorporate some prepositional phrases and introductory clauses so you incorporate sentence variety and create a rhythm to your sentences that avoid chopiness.

By *proofreading*, you are taking into consideration standard writing conventions:

**5. Conventions—Have I demonstrated a good grasp of standard writing conventions?** Have I checked the essay for any misspellings? Is my punctuation accurate? Have I avoided the pitfalls of many common grammar errors? Did I meet the word counts required for this essay? Do I have proper paragraph structure? Have I made sure that what I mean to say is not undermined or impeded by grammatical, mechanical, or stylistic errors?



## Proofread Your Writing Backward

While there are a number of ways to proofread written content for errors, it is often useful to review your writing “backward.” That is, you read the last sentence of the essay first, then backward, sentence by sentence, until you finish your proofreading with the first sentence. This kind of reading isolates individual sentences from the essay’s context, so that you are not reading for meaning within a paragraph but for errors that may appear in individual sentences.

Apply the backward review to the *Revision Practices within a Writing Community* flowchart above: did you find the error?

## Writing to the Final Version: Suit Up!

Writing a polished paper is, in and of itself, an intellectual challenge and following formatting guidelines in this and other college courses signals to your readers that your paper should be taken seriously as a contribution to a particular course or a given academic or professional field. Think of presenting your essay in the correct format like wearing a tailored suit to a job interview.

Of course, there’s more to making a narrative presentable than its format. The narrative should be presentable in terms of its grammar, mechanics, and style. If you would like to get a little practice with sentence-by-sentence proofreading, feel free to try either of the proofreading exercises made available by Pen and Page:

- Proofreading Exercise 1
- Proofreading Exercise 2

## 33. Matters of Grammar, Mechanics, and Style

For many students, the discussion of grammar, mechanics, and style is intimidating. There are rules, and lots of them. And when rules are broken, some kind of inquisition or punishment is bound to follow. Any student who has experienced an instructor's editorial comments (also known as the red pen "blood" in the margins of a paper) knows what it feels like to be a hapless violator of the rules.

### Rules Matter

Despite your gut reactions to learning certain rules for grammar, mechanics, and style, you have to acknowledge that the rules matter. People communicate daily in written forms, such as emails, letters, reports, and essays. And many of them need to communicate in such a way that they are taken seriously.

In academic writing, it is your job to make sure that the people who read what you write (your instructor and classmates) understand what you are trying to say. If your thoughts are not arranged appropriately, your readers may get confused. If you do not acknowledge and employ the rules of grammar, mechanics, and style, you are at a distinct disadvantage as a communicator.

### The Grammar Report

Being able to identify grammatical, mechanical, or stylistic problems

that exist in your writing is one way to improve your writing. These problems may have been with you for some time, failing to be identified, researched, and remedied.

The Grammar Report assignments will assist you in not only identifying your problem, but also you help you seek out examples of the problem, research the rules related to the problem, and finally “reporting” on your experience to your classmates. Indeed, the process is not just about you addressing a writing problem; it is about sharing your experience and remedies, so that you can teach others to avoid writing errors.

## Improving Grammar, Mechanics, and Style

There are a wide variety of resources to support your research. A good place to start is the free online textbook, *Successful Writing*. You can use the find/search feature of your browser to look up particular topics and use the practice exercises to work through the process of identifying and correcting errors.

Here are some online resources that you may find useful, as well:

- Capital Community College’s Guide to Grammar and Writing
- Grammar Book
- Purdue Online Writing Lab (OWL)
- Grammar Girl

At some point, you may find that you share the same grammatical, mechanical, or stylistic problems with others in this course. Take a moment to look at the most commonly occurring grammar errors listed in the “Attending to Grammar” materials developed by the Dartmouth Writing Program. Of the top 20 grammar errors listed, consider which ones are common to you. Then make sure you make every effort to eradicate them from your writing.

## 34. Peer Review Checklist

Each essay is made up of multiple parts. In order to have a strong essay each part must be logical and effective. In many cases essays will be written with a strong thesis, but the rest of the paper will be lacking; making the paper ineffective. An essay is only as strong as its weakest point.

One of the most important steps for creating a strong essay is to have others review it. By completing a peer review you will be able to create a better thesis statement and supporting arguments.

Clip art of a checklist. No writing is visible, just lines where item text would appear.

Using a checklist to complete your review will allow you to rate each of the parts in the paper according to their strength. There are many different peer review checklists, but the one below should be helpful for your assignment.

1. Is the thesis clear?
2. Does the author use his or her own ideas in the thesis and argument?
3. Is the significance of the problem in the paper explained? Is the significance compelling?
4. Are the ideas developed logically and thoroughly?
5. Does the author use ethos effectively?
6. Does the author use pathos effectively?
7. Are different viewpoints acknowledged?
8. Are objections effectively handled?
9. Does the author give adequate explanations about sources used?
10. Are the sources well-integrated into the paper, or do they seem to be added in just for the sake of adding sources?
11. Is the word choice specific, concrete and interesting?

12. Are the sentences clear?
13. Is the overall organization of the argument effective?
14. Are the transitions between paragraphs smooth?
15. Are there any grammatical errors?

### *Sources*

Based on the rubric found at: Grading Rubric Template (Word)

# 35. Comparative Chart of Writing Strategies

## Structuring Specialized Paragraphs

Many of the same common patterns of organizing your writing and thinking are available at the paragraph level to help you make your case to support your thesis. Using these common patterns helps readers understand your points more easily.

Pattern	Explanation	Example
Analogy	Analogies are used to draw comparisons between seemingly unlike people, items, places, or situations. Writers use analogies to help clarify a point.	Walking down an aisle at a farmers' market is like walking down the rows in a garden. Fresh mustard greens might be on one side and fresh radishes on another. The smell of green beans meshes with the smell of strawberries and the vibrant colors of nature are everywhere. You might find that you even have a little garden dirt on your shoes.
Cause and effect	Cause-and-effect paragraphs point out how one thing is caused by another and are used to clarify relationships.	You will find that your meals benefit greatly from shopping at the farmers' market. You will eat fewer unnatural foods, so you will feel better and have more energy. The freshness of the foods will make your dishes taste and look better. The excitement of finding something new at the market will translate to eagerness to try it out within a meal. It won't be long until you anticipate going to the farmers' market as a way to enhance the quality of your meals.

Pattern	Explanation	Example
Comparison and contrast	Comparison and contrast is simply telling how two things are alike or different. You can choose to compare and contrast by selecting a trait, explaining how each thing relates, and then moving on to another trait (alternating organization, as here). Or for more complex comparisons and contrasts, you can describe all the features of one thing in one or more paragraphs and then all the features of the other thing in one or more paragraphs (block organization).	<p>Tomatoes purchased at the farmers' market are almost totally different from tomatoes purchased in a grocery store. To begin with, although tomatoes from both sources will mostly be red, the tomatoes at the farmers' market are a brighter red than those at a grocery store. That doesn't mean they are shinier—in fact, grocery store tomatoes are often shinier since they have been waxed. You are likely to see great size variation in tomatoes at the farmers' market, with tomatoes ranging from only a couple of inches across to eight inches across. By contrast, the tomatoes in a grocery store will be fairly uniform in size. All the visual differences are interesting, but the most important difference is the taste. The farmers' market tomatoes will be bursting with flavor from ripening on the vine in their own time. The grocery store tomatoes are often close to flavorless. Unless you have no choice, you really should check out a farmers' market the next time you're shopping for fresh produce.</p>
Definition	Definition paragraphs are used to clarify key word or concepts.	<p>If you see a “pluot” at the farmers' market, give it a try. It might seem odd to see a fruit you have never heard of before, but pluots are relatively new in the fruit world. A pluot is a hybrid fruit created from joining an apricot and a plum. Pluots range in size from that of a small apricot to that of a large plum. The outer skin varies in color from sort of cloudy golden to cloudy purplish. Overall, a pluot looks and tastes more like a plum than an apricot, although the skins are less tart than those of typical plums.</p>



Pattern	Explanation	Example
Description	You can use description to bring something to life so that the readers can get a clear impression of it.	The farmers who sell their wares at the farmers' market near my house are as natural as their foods. They are all dressed casually so that they look more like they are hanging out with friends than trying to entice people to purchase something from them. The women aren't wearing makeup and the men have not necessarily shaved in a few days. They are eager to share information and samples without applying any sales pressure. They are people with whom you would likely enjoy sitting around a campfire and trading stories.
Examples	Examples are commonly used to clarify a point for readers.	You will find some foods at the farmers' market that you might not typically eat. For example, some farmers bring pickled pigs' feet or mustard greens that taste like wasabi. Some vendors sell gooseberry pies and cactus jelly. It is not uncommon to see kumquat jam and garlic spears. The farmers' market is truly an adventuresome way to shop for food.
Narration	Narration is writing that sounds like a story. You might use narration within a nonfiction paper as a means of personalizing a topic or simply making a point stand out.	Sauntering through the farmers' market on a cool fall day, I happened upon a small lizard. Actually, my foot nearly happened upon him, but I stopped just in time to pull back and spare him. As I stooped to look at him, he scampered up over the top of a watermelon and out of sight. Glancing behind the melon, I saw that the lizard had a friend. I watched them bopping their heads at each other and couldn't help but wonder if they were communicating. Perhaps the one was telling the other about the big brown thing that nearly crashed down upon him. For him, I expect it was a harrowing moment. For me, it was just another charming trip to the farmers' market.

Pattern	Explanation	Example
Problem-solution	A problem-solution paragraph begins with a topic sentence that presents a problem and then follows with details that present a solution for the problem.	Our farmers' market is in danger of closing because a building is going to be constructed in the empty lot where it has been held for the past ten years. Since the market is such an asset to our community, a committee formed to look for a new location. The first idea was to close a street off for a few hours each Saturday morning. Unfortunately, the city manager nixed that idea since he believed that too many people would complain. Barry Moore suggested that the market could be held in the state park that is just a few miles out of town. Again, a government worker struck down the idea. This time, the problem was that for-profit events are not allowed in state parks. Finally, I came up with the perfect idea, and our government blessed the idea. Since the high school is closed on Saturday, we will be having the market in the school parking lot.

# Using a Clear Organizational Pattern

Depending on your writing topic, you might find it beneficial to use one of these common organizational patterns.

Pattern	Explanation	Example
Process analysis	A process analysis paragraph is used to describe how something is made or to explain the steps for how something is done.	<p>The first key to growing good tomatoes is to give the seedlings plenty of room. Make sure to transplant them to small pots once they get their first leaves. Even when they are just starting out in pots, they need plenty of light, air, and heat. Make sure to warm up the ground in advance by covering it in plastic sheeting for a couple of weeks. When you are ready to plant them in soil, plant them deeply enough so they can put down some strong roots. Mulch next, and once the stems of the tomato plants have reached a few inches in height, cut off the lower leaves to avoid fungi. Carefully prune the suckers that develop in the joints of the developing stems.</p>

Pattern	Explanation	Example
Chronological	Chronological arrangement presents information in time order.	<p>As soon as I arrived at the farmers' market, I bought a large bag of lettuce. I walked around the corner and saw the biggest, most gorgeous sunflower I had ever seen. So I bought it and added it to my lettuce bag. The flower was so big that I had to hold the bag right in front of me to keep it from being bumped. At the Wilson Pork Farm booth, I tasted a little pulled pork. You guessed it—I had to buy a quart of it. I went on with a plastic quart container in my left hand and my lettuce and flower in my right hand. I was handling it all just fine until I saw a huge hanging spider plant I had to have. Ever so gently, I placed my pulled pork container inside the spider fern plant pot. Now I was holding everything right in front of me as I tried to safely make my way through the crowd. That's when I met up with little Willie. Willie was about seven years old and he was playing tag with his brother. I'm not sure where their mother was, but Willie came running around the corner and smacked right into me. You are probably thinking that poor Willie had pulled pork all over his clothes and an upside-down plant on his head. But no, not at all. That was me. Willie didn't even notice. He was too busy chasing his brother.</p>

Pattern	Explanation	Example
General-to-specific	A common paragraph format is to present a general idea and then give examples.	<p>The displays at the farmers' market do not lack for variety. You will see every almost every kind of fresh, locally grown food you can imagine. The featured fruits on a given day might be as varied as pomegranates, persimmons, guava, jackfruit, and citron. Vegetables might include shiitake mushrooms, artichokes, avocados, and garlic. Some vendors also sell crafts, preserves, seeds, and other supplies suitable for starting your own garden.</p>
Specific-to-general	The reverse of the above format is to give some examples and then summarize them with a general idea.	<p>Your sense of smell is awakened by eighteen varieties of fresh roma tomatoes. Your mouth waters at the prospect of sampling the fresh breads. Your eye catches a glimpse of the colors of handmade, embroidered bags. You linger to touch a perfectly ripe peach. Your ears catch the strain of an impromptu jug band. A walk up and down the aisles of your local farmers' market will engage all of your senses.</p>

Pattern	Explanation	Example
Spatial	A paragraph using spatial organization presents details as you would naturally encounter them, such as from top to bottom or from the inside to the outside. In other words, details are presented based on their physical location.	From top to bottom, the spice booth at our farmers' market is amazing. Up high they display artwork painstakingly made with spices. At eye level, you see at least ten different fresh spices in small baggies. On the tabletop is located an assortment of tasting bowls with choices ranging from desserts to drinks to salads. Below the table, but out of the way of customers, are large bags of the different spices. Besides being a great use of space, the spice booth looks both professional and charming.

# Maintaining Internal Integrity of Paragraphs

A paragraph is more than just a group of sentences thrown together. You need to make linkages between your ideas, use parallelism, and maintain consistency.

Pattern	Explanation	Example
Linkages	<p>Paragraphs with linkages flow well so that readers can follow along easily. You need to present an idea and then link the rest of the ideas in the paragraph together. Do not leave any pulling together for your readers to do mentally. Do it all for them.</p>	<p>Not all the booths at a farmers' market feature food. One couple has a booth that sells only fresh flowers. They display some flowers in antique containers and sell the flowers, the containers, or both. A clothesline above our heads displays a variety of dried flowers. A table holds about fifty vases of varying sizes, and they are all full of flowers. Some vases hold only one kind of long-stem flowers. Others hold mixtures of uncut flowers. Still others showcase gorgeous arrangements. Both the man and the woman wear a wreath of flowers on their heads. The whole display is so attractive and smells so fabulous that it really draws people in.</p>
Parallelism	<p>Parallelism means that you maintain the same general wording and format for similar situations throughout the paragraph so that once readers figure out what is going on, they can easily understand the whole paragraph.</p>	<p>The history of this farmers' market followed a fairly typical pattern. It started out in the 1970s as a co-op of local farmers, featuring a small city block of modest tables and temporary displays every Saturday morning from April to October from 9 a.m. to 1 p.m. In the early 1990s, with the help of a grant from the city, the market expanded its footprint to a larger, more centrally located city block with ample parking. It benefited greatly from the installation of permanent booths, electrical outlets, and a ready water supply. These amenities drew far more customers and merchants. Its popularity reached unprecedented levels by 2000, when the city offered to help with the staffing needed to keep it open from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m. on Saturdays and from noon to 5 p.m. on Sundays. Recently, discussions began about how to open the market on weeknights in the summer from 5 p.m. to 8 p.m.</p>

Pattern	Explanation	Example
Consistency	A paragraph with consistency uses the same point of view and the same verb tense throughout. In other words, if you are using third person in the beginning of the paragraph, you use it throughout the paragraph. If you are using present tense to start the paragraph, you stick with it.	There comes a time each year when you must begin the all-important step of actually harvesting your vegetable garden. You will want to pick some of your vegetables before they are fully ripe. Eggplants, cucumbers, and squash fall into this category because they can further ripen once you have picked them. On the other hand, you will find that tomatoes, pumpkins, and most melons really need to ripen fully before you harvest them. You should also keep in mind that you will need plenty of storage space for your bounty. And if you have a good harvest, you might want to have a few friends in mind, especially as recipients for your squash and cucumbers.

# Using Transitions

Transitions within paragraphs are words that connect one sentence to another so that readers can easily follow the intended meanings of sentences and relationships between sentences. The following table shows some commonly used transition words:



---

### Commonly Used Transition Words

To compare/contrast	after that, again, also, although, and then, but, despite, even though, finally, first/second/third/etc., however, in contrast, in the same way, likewise, nevertheless, next, on the other hand, similarly, then
To signal cause and effect	as a result, because, consequently, due to, hence, since, therefore, thus
To show sequence or time	after, as soon as, at that time, before, during, earlier, finally, immediately, in the meantime, later, meanwhile, now, presently, simultaneously, so far, soon, until, then, thereafter, when, while
To indicate place or direction	above, adjacent to, below, beside, beyond, close, nearby, next to, north/south/east/west, opposite, to the left/right
To present examples	for example, for instance, in fact, to illustrate, specifically
To suggest relationships	and, also, besides, further, furthermore, in addition, moreover, too

---



PART III  
USING SOURCES



# 36. Evidence

## WHAT THIS HANDOUT IS ABOUT

This handout will provide a broad overview of gathering and using evidence. It will help you decide what counts as evidence, put evidence to work in your writing, and determine whether you have enough evidence. It will also offer links to additional resources.

## INTRODUCTION

Many papers that you write in college will require you to make an argument; this means that you must take a position on the subject you are discussing and support that position with evidence. It's important that you use the right kind of evidence, that you use it effectively, and that you have an appropriate amount of it. If, for example, your philosophy professor didn't like it that you used a survey of public opinion as your primary evidence in your ethics paper, you need to find out more about what philosophers count as good evidence. If your instructor has told you that you need more analysis, suggested that you're "just listing" points or giving a "laundry list," or asked you how certain points are related to your argument, it may mean that you can do more to fully incorporate your evidence into your argument. Comments like "for example?," "proof?," "go deeper," or "expand" in the margins of your graded paper suggest that you may need more evidence. Let's take a look at each of these issues—understanding what counts as evidence, using evidence in your argument, and deciding whether you need more evidence.

## WHAT COUNTS AS EVIDENCE?

Before you begin gathering information for possible use as evidence in your argument, you need to be sure that you understand the purpose of your assignment. If you are working on a project for a class, look carefully at the assignment prompt. It may give you clues about what sorts of evidence you will need. Does the instructor mention any particular books you should use in writing your paper or the names of any authors who have written about your topic? How long should your paper be (longer works may require more, or more varied, evidence)? What themes or topics come up in the text of the prompt? Our handout on understanding writing assignments can help you interpret your assignment. It's also a good idea to think over what has been said about the assignment in class and to talk with your instructor if you need clarification or guidance.

## WHAT MATTERS TO INSTRUCTORS?

Instructors in different academic fields expect different kinds of arguments and evidence—your chemistry paper might include graphs, charts, statistics, and other quantitative data as evidence, whereas your English paper might include passages from a novel, examples of recurring symbols, or discussions of characterization in the novel. Consider what kinds of sources and evidence you have seen in course readings and lectures. You may wish to see whether the Writing Center has a handout regarding the specific academic field you're working in—for example, literature, sociology, or history.

## WHAT ARE PRIMARY AND SECONDARY SOURCES?

A note on terminology: many researchers distinguish between primary and secondary sources of evidence (in this case, “primary” means “first” or “original,” not “most important”). Primary sources include original documents, photographs, interviews, and so forth. Secondary sources present information that has already been processed or interpreted by someone else. For example, if you are writing a paper about the movie “The Matrix,” the movie itself, an interview with the director, and production photos could serve as primary sources of evidence. A movie review from a magazine or a collection of essays about the film would be secondary sources. Depending on the context, the same item could be either a primary or a secondary source: if I am writing about people’s relationships with animals, a collection of stories about animals might be a secondary source; if I am writing about how editors gather diverse stories into collections, the same book might now function as a primary source.

## WHERE CAN I FIND EVIDENCE?

Here are some examples of sources of information and tips about how to use them in gathering evidence. Ask your instructor if you aren’t sure whether a certain source would be appropriate for your paper.

### Print and electronic sources

Books, journals, websites, newspapers, magazines, and

documentary films are some of the most common sources of evidence for academic writing. Our handout on evaluating print sources will help you choose your print sources wisely, and the library has a tutorial on evaluating both print sources and websites. A librarian can help you find sources that are appropriate for the type of assignment you are completing. Just visit the reference desk at Davis or the Undergraduate Library or chat with a librarian online (the library's IM screen name is undergradref).

## Observation

Sometimes you can directly observe the thing you are interested in, by watching, listening to, touching, tasting, or smelling it. For example, if you were asked to write about Mozart's music, you could listen to it; if your topic was how businesses attract traffic, you might go and look at window displays at the mall.

## Interviews

An interview is a good way to collect information that you can't find through any other type of research. An interview can provide an expert's opinion, biographical or first-hand experiences, and suggestions for further research.

## Surveys

Surveys allow you to find out some of what a group of people thinks about a topic. Designing an effective survey and interpreting the



data you get can be challenging, so it's a good idea to check with your instructor before creating or administering a survey.

## Experiments

Experimental data serve as the primary form of scientific evidence. For scientific experiments, you should follow the specific guidelines of the discipline you are studying. For writing in other fields, more informal experiments might be acceptable as evidence. For example, if you want to prove that food choices in a cafeteria are affected by gender norms, you might ask classmates to undermine those norms on purpose and observe how others react. What would happen if a football player were eating dinner with his teammates and he brought a small salad and diet drink to the table, all the while murmuring about his waistline and wondering how many fat grams the salad dressing contained?

## Personal experience

Using your own experiences can be a powerful way to appeal to your readers. You should, however, use personal experience only when it is appropriate to your topic, your writing goals, and your audience. Personal experience should not be your only form of evidence in most papers, and some disciplines frown on using personal experience at all. For example, a story about the microscope you received as a Christmas gift when you were nine years old is probably not applicable to your biology lab report.

## USING EVIDENCE IN AN ARGUMENT

### Does evidence speak for itself?

Absolutely not. After you introduce evidence into your writing, you must say why and how this evidence supports your argument. In other words, you have to explain the significance of the evidence and its function in your paper. What turns a fact or piece of information into evidence is the connection it has with a larger claim or argument: evidence is always evidence *for* or *against* something, and you have to make that link clear.

As writers, we sometimes assume that our readers already know what we are talking about; we may be wary of elaborating too much because we think the point is obvious. But readers can't read our minds: although they may be familiar with many of the ideas we are discussing, they don't know what we are trying to do with those ideas unless we indicate it through explanations, organization, transitions, and so forth. Try to spell out the connections that you were making in your mind when you chose your evidence, decided where to place it in your paper, and drew conclusions based on it. Remember, you can always cut prose from your paper later if you decide that you are stating the obvious.

**Here are some questions you can ask yourself about a particular bit of evidence:**

1. O.k., I've just stated this point, but so what? Why is it interesting? Why should anyone care?
2. What does this information imply?
3. What are the consequences of thinking this way or looking at a problem this way?
4. I've just described what something is like or how I see it, but why is it like that?
5. I've just said that something happens-so how does it happen?

How does it come to be the way it is?

6. Why is this information important? Why does it matter?
7. How is this idea related to my thesis? What connections exist between them? Does it support my thesis? If so, how does it do that?
8. Can I give an example to illustrate this point?

Answering these questions may help you explain how your evidence is related to your overall argument.

## HOW CAN I INCORPORATE EVIDENCE INTO MY PAPER?

There are many ways to present your evidence. Often, your evidence will be included as text in the body of your paper, as a quotation, paraphrase, or summary. Sometimes you might include graphs, charts, or tables; excerpts from an interview; or photographs or illustrations with accompanying captions.

### Quotations

When you quote, you are reproducing another writer's words exactly as they appear on the page. Here are some tips to help you decide when to use quotations:

1. Quote if you can't say it any better and the author's words are particularly brilliant, witty, edgy, distinctive, a good illustration of a point you're making, or otherwise interesting.
2. Quote if you are using a particularly authoritative source and you need the author's expertise to back up your point.
3. Quote if you are analyzing diction, tone, or a writer's use of a

specific word or phrase.

4. Quote if you are taking a position that relies on the reader's understanding exactly what another writer says about the topic.

Be sure to introduce each quotation you use, and always cite your sources. See our handout on quotations for more details on when to quote and how to format quotations.

Like all pieces of evidence, a quotation can't speak for itself. If you end a paragraph with a quotation, that may be a sign that you have neglected to discuss the importance of the quotation in terms of your argument. It's important to avoid "plop quotations," that is, quotations that are just dropped into your paper without any introduction, discussion, or follow-up.

## Paraphrasing

When you paraphrase, you take a specific section of a text and put it into your own words. Putting it into your own words doesn't mean just changing or rearranging a few of the author's words: to paraphrase well and avoid plagiarism, try setting your source aside and restating the sentence or paragraph you have just read, as though you were describing it to another person. Paraphrasing is different than summary because a paraphrase focuses on a particular, fairly short bit of text (like a phrase, sentence, or paragraph). You'll need to indicate when you are paraphrasing someone else's text by citing your source correctly, just as you would with a quotation.

When might you want to paraphrase?

1. Paraphrase when you want to introduce a writer's position, but his or her original words aren't special enough to quote.
2. Paraphrase when you are supporting a particular point and

need to draw on a certain place in a text that supports your point—for example, when one paragraph in a source is especially relevant.

3. Paraphrase when you want to present a writer's view on a topic that differs from your position or that of another writer; you can then refute writer's specific points in your own words after you paraphrase.
4. Paraphrase when you want to comment on a particular example that another writer uses.
5. Paraphrase when you need to present information that's unlikely to be questioned.

## Summary

When you summarize, you are offering an overview of an entire text, or at least a lengthy section of a text. Summary is useful when you are providing background information, grounding your own argument, or mentioning a source as a counter-argument. A summary is less nuanced than paraphrased material. It can be the most effective way to incorporate a large number of sources when you don't have a lot of space. When you are summarizing someone else's argument or ideas, be sure this is clear to the reader and cite your source appropriately.

## Statistics, data, charts, graphs, photographs, illustrations

Sometimes the best evidence for your argument is a hard fact or visual representation of a fact. This type of evidence can be a solid backbone for your argument, but you still need to create context for your reader and draw the connections you want him or her to

make. Remember that statistics, data, charts, graph, photographs, and illustrations are all open to interpretation. Guide the reader through the interpretation process. Again, always, cite the origin of your evidence if you didn't produce the material you are using yourself.

## DO I NEED MORE EVIDENCE?

Let's say that you've identified some appropriate sources, found some evidence, explained to the reader how it fits into your overall argument, incorporated it into your draft effectively, and cited your sources. How do you tell whether you've got enough evidence and whether it's working well in the service of a strong argument or analysis? Here are some techniques you can use to review your draft and assess your use of evidence.

### Make a reverse outline

A reverse outline is a great technique for helping you see how each paragraph contributes to proving your thesis. When you make a reverse outline, you record the main ideas in each paragraph in a shorter (outline-like) form so that you can see at a glance what is in your paper. The reverse outline is helpful in at least three ways. First, it lets you see where you have dealt with too many topics in one paragraph (in general, you should have one main idea per paragraph). Second, the reverse outline can help you see where you need more evidence to prove your point or more analysis of that evidence. Third, the reverse outline can help you write your topic sentences: once you have decided what you want each paragraph to be about, you can write topic sentences that explain the topics of

the paragraphs and state the relationship of each topic to the overall thesis of the paper.

For tips on making a reverse outline, see our handout on organization.

## Color code your paper

You will need three highlighters or colored pencils for this exercise. Use one color to highlight general assertions. These will typically be the topic sentences in your paper. Next, use another color to highlight the specific evidence you provide for each assertion (including quotations, paraphrased or summarized material, statistics, examples, and your own ideas). Lastly, use another color to highlight analysis of your evidence. Which assertions are key to your overall argument? Which ones are especially contestable? How much evidence do you have for each assertion? How much analysis? In general, you should have at least as much analysis as you do evidence, or your paper runs the risk of being more summary than argument. The more controversial an assertion is, the more evidence you may need to provide in order to persuade your reader.

## Play devil's advocate, act like a child, or doubt everything

This technique may be easiest to use with a partner. Ask your friend to take on one of the roles above, then read your paper aloud to him/her. After each section, pause and let your friend interrogate you. If your friend is playing devil's advocate, he or she will always take the opposing viewpoint and force you to keep defending yourself. If your friend is acting like a child, he or she will question every sentence, even seemingly self-explanatory ones. If your friend

is a doubter, he or she won't believe anything you say. Justifying your position verbally or explaining yourself will force you to strengthen the evidence in your paper. If you already have enough evidence but haven't connected it clearly enough to your main argument, explaining to your friend how the evidence is relevant or what it proves may help you to do so.

## COMMON QUESTIONS AND ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- I have a general topic in mind; how can I develop it so I'll know what evidence I need? And how can I get ideas for more evidence? See our handout on brainstorming.
- Who can help me find evidence on my topic? Check out UNC Libraries.
- I'm writing for a specific purpose; how can I tell what kind of evidence my audience wants? See our handouts on audience, writing for specific disciplines, and particular writing assignments.
- How should I read materials to gather evidence? See our handout on reading to write.
- How can I make a good argument? Check out our handouts on argument and thesis statements.
- How do I tell if my paragraphs and my paper are well-organized? Review our handouts on paragraph development, transitions, and reorganizing drafts.
- How do I quote my sources and incorporate those quotes into my text? Our handouts on quotations and avoiding plagiarism offer useful tips.
- How do I cite my evidence? See the UNC Libraries citation tutorial.
- I think that I'm giving evidence, but my instructor says I'm using too much summary. How can I tell? Check out our



handout on using summary wisely.

- I want to use personal experience as evidence, but can I say “I”? We have a handout on when to use “I.”

## WORKS CONSULTED

We consulted these works while writing the original version of this handout. This is not a comprehensive list of resources on the handout’s topic, and we encourage you to do your own research to find the latest publications on this topic. Please do not use this list as a model for the format of your own reference list, as it may not match the citation style you are using. For guidance on formatting citations, please see the UNC Libraries citation tutorial.

Lunsford, Andrea A., and John J. Ruszkiewicz. John J. Everything’s an argument. Boston: Bedford/St. Martin’s, 1999

Miller, Richard E., and Kurt Spellmeyer. The New Humanities Reader Home Page. 22 Feb. 2005 [http://www.newhum.com/for\\_students/tutorama/index.html](http://www.newhum.com/for_students/tutorama/index.html).

[http://www.lib.umd.edu/UES/library\\_guides\\_subject.html](http://www.lib.umd.edu/UES/library_guides_subject.html)

---

## 37. Quoting, Paraphrasing, and Avoiding Plagiarism

- How to Summarize: An Overview
- How to Quote and Paraphrase: An Overview
- When to Quote, When to Paraphrase
- Four Examples of Quotes and Paraphrases
- How to Avoid Plagiarism in the Research Process
- Plagiarism and the Internet

Learning how to effectively quote and paraphrase research can be difficult and it certainly takes practice. Hopefully, your abilities to make good use of your research will improve as you work through the exercises in part two and three of *The Process of Research Writing*, not to mention as you take on other research writing experiences beyond this class. The goal of this chapter is to introduce some basic strategies for summarizing, quoting and paraphrasing research in your writing and to explain how to avoid plagiarizing your research.

### How to Summarize: An Overview

A summary is a brief explanation of a longer text. Some summaries, such as the ones that accompany annotated bibliographies, are very short, just a sentence or two. Others are much longer, though summaries are always much shorter than the text being summarized in the first place.

Summaries of different lengths are useful in research writing because you often need to provide your readers with an explanation of the text you are discussing. This is especially true when you are going to quote or paraphrase from a source.

Of course, the first step in writing a good summary is to do a thorough reading of the text you are going to summarize in the first place. Beyond that important start, there are a few basic guidelines you should follow when you write summary material:

- Stay “neutral” in your summarizing. Summaries provide “just the facts” and are not the place where you offer your opinions about the text you are summarizing. Save your opinions and evaluation of the evidence you are summarizing for other parts of your writing.
- Don’t quote from what you are summarizing. Summaries will be more useful to you and your colleagues if you write them in your own words.
- Don’t “cut and paste” from database abstracts. Many of the periodical indexes that are available as part of your library’s computer system include abstracts of articles. Do not “cut” this abstract material and then “paste” it into your own annotated bibliography. For one thing, this is plagiarism. Second, “cutting and pasting” from the abstract defeats one of the purposes of writing summaries and creating an annotated bibliography in the first place, which is to help you understand and explain your research.

## How to Quote and Paraphrase: An Overview

Writers quote and paraphrase from research in order to support their points and to persuade their readers. A quote or a paraphrase from a piece of evidence in support of a point answers the reader’s question, “says who?”

This is especially true in academic writing since scholarly readers are most persuaded by effective research and evidence. For example, readers of an article about a new cancer medication published in a medical journal will be most interested in the

scholar's research and statistics that demonstrate the effectiveness of the treatment. Conversely, they will not be as persuaded by emotional stories from individual patients about how a new cancer medication improved the quality of their lives. While this appeal to emotion can be effective and is common in popular sources, these individual anecdotes do not carry the same sort of "scholarly" or scientific value as well-reasoned research and evidence.

Of course, your instructor is not expecting you to be an expert on the topic of your research paper. While you might conduct some primary research, it's a good bet that you'll be relying on secondary sources such as books, articles, and Web sites to inform and persuade your readers. You'll present this research to your readers in the form of quotes and paraphrases.

A "quote" is a direct restatement of the exact words from the original source. The general rule of thumb is any time you use three or more words as they appeared in the original source, you should treat it as a quote. A "paraphrase" is a restatement of the information or point of the original source in your own words.

While quotes and paraphrases are different and should be used in different ways in your research writing (as the examples in this section suggest), they do have a number of things in common.

Both quotes and paraphrases should:

- be "introduced" to the reader, particularly the first time you mention a source;
- include an explanation of the evidence which explains to the reader why you think the evidence is important, especially if it is not apparent from the context of the quote or paraphrase; and
- include a proper citation of the source.

The method you should follow to properly quote or paraphrase depends on the style guide you are following in your academic writing. The two most common style guides used in academic writing are the Modern Language Association (MLA), and the

American Psychological Association (APA). I discuss both of these different style guides in some detail in the Appendix of this book.

Your instructor will probably assign one of these styles before you begin working on your project, however, if he/she doesn't mention this, be sure to ask.

## When to Quote, When to Paraphrase

The real “art” to research writing is using quotes and paraphrases from evidence effectively in order to support your point. There are certain “rules,” dictated by the rules of style you are following, such as the ones presented by the MLA or the ones presented by the APA. There are certain “guidelines” and suggestions, like the ones I offer in the previous section and the ones you will learn from your teacher and colleagues.

But when all is said and done, the question of when to quote and when to paraphrase depends a great deal on the specific context of the writing and the effect you are trying to achieve. Learning the best times to quote and paraphrase takes practice and experience.

In general, **it is best to use a quote when:**

- **The exact words of your source are important for the point you are trying to make.** This is especially true if you are quoting technical language, terms, or very specific word choices.
- **You want to highlight your *agreement* with the author's words.** If you agree with the point the author of the evidence makes and you like their exact words, use them as a quote.
- **You want to highlight your *disagreement* with the author's words.** In other words, you may sometimes want to use a direct quote to indicate exactly what it is you disagree about. This might be particularly true when you are considering the antithetical positions in your research writing projects.

In general, **it is best to paraphrase when:**

- **There is no good reason to use a quote to refer to your evidence.** If the author's exact words are not especially important to the point you are trying to make, you are usually better off paraphrasing the evidence.
- **You are trying to explain a particular a piece of evidence in order to explain or interpret it in more detail.** This might be particularly true in writing projects like critiques.
- **You need to balance a direct quote in your writing.** You need to be careful about directly quoting your research too much because it can sometimes make for awkward and difficult to read prose. So, one of the reasons to use a paraphrase instead of a quote is to create balance within your writing.

## Tips for Quoting and Paraphrasing

- **Introduce** your quotes and paraphrases to your reader, especially on first reference.
- **Explain** the significance of the quote or paraphrase to your reader.
- **Cite** your quote or paraphrase properly according to the rules of style you are following in your essay.
- **Quote when** the exact words are important, when you want to highlight your agreement or your disagreement.
- **Paraphrase when** the exact words aren't important, when you want to explain the point of your evidence, or when you need to balance the direct quotes in your writing.

## Four Examples of Quotes and Paraphrases

Here are four examples of what I mean about properly quoting and paraphrasing evidence in your research essays. In each case, I begin with a **BAD** example, or the way **NOT** to quote or paraphrase.

## Quoting in MLA Style

Here's the first **BAD** example, where the writer is trying to follow the rules of MLA style:

There are many positive effects for advertising prescription drugs on television. "African-American physicians regard direct-to-consumer advertising of prescription medicines as one way to educate minority patients about needed treatment and healthcare options" (Wechsler, Internet).

This is a potentially good piece of information to support a research writer's claim, but the researcher hasn't done any of the necessary work to explain where this quote comes from or to explain why it is important for supporting her point. Rather, she has simply "dropped in" the quote, leaving the interpretation of its significance up to the reader.

Now consider this revised **GOOD** (or at least **BETTER**) example of how this quote might be better introduced into the essay:

In her *Pharmaceutical Executive* article available through the Wilson Select Internet database, Jill Wechsler writes about one of the positive effects of advertising prescription drugs on television. "African-American physicians regard direct-to-consumer advertising of prescription medicines as one way to educate minority patients about needed treatment and healthcare options."

In this revision, it's much more clear what point the writer is trying to make with this evidence and where this evidence comes from. In this particular example, the passage is from a traditional print journal called *Pharmaceutical Executive*. However, the writer needs to indicate that she actually found and read this article through

Wilson Select, an Internet database which reproduces the “full text” of articles from periodicals without any graphics, charts, or page numbers.

When you use a direct quote in your research, you need to indicate the page number of that direct quote or you need to indicate that the evidence has no specific page numbers. While it can be a bit awkward to indicate within the text how the writer found this information if it's from the Internet, it's important to do so on the first reference of a piece of evidence in your writing. On references to this piece of evidence after the first reference, you can use just the last name of the writer. For example:

Wechsler also reports on the positive effects of advertising prescription drugs on television. She writes...

## Paraphrasing in MLA Style

In this example, the writer is using MLA style to write a research essay for a Literature class. Here is a **BAD** example of a paraphrase:

While Gatsby is deeply in love with Daisy in *The Great Gatsby*, his love for her is indistinguishable from his love of his possessions (Callahan).

There are two problems with this paraphrase. First, if this is the first or only reference to this particular piece of evidence in the research essay, the writer should include more information about the source of this paraphrase in order to properly introduce it.

Second, this paraphrase is actually not of the entire article but rather of a specific passage. The writer has neglected to note the page number within the parenthetical citation.

A **GOOD** or at least **BETTER** revision of this paraphrase might look like this:

John F. Callahan suggests in his article “F. Scott Fitzgerald’s Evolving American Dream” that while Gatsby is deeply in love with Daisy in *The Great Gatsby*, his love for her is



indistinguishable from his love of his possessions (381). By incorporating the name of the author of the evidence the research writer is referring to here, the source of this paraphrase is now clear to the reader. Furthermore, because there is a page number at the end of this sentence, the reader understands that this passage is a paraphrase of a particular part of Callahan's essay and not a summary of the entire essay. Again, if the research writer had introduced this source to his readers earlier, he could have started with a phrase like "Callahan suggests..." and then continued on with his paraphrase. If the research writer were offering a brief summary of the entire essay following MLA style, he wouldn't include a page number in parentheses. For example:

John F. Callahan's article "F. Scott Fitzgerald's Evolving American Dream" examines Fitzgerald's fascination with the elusiveness of the American Dream in the novels *The Great Gatsby*, *Tender is the Night*, and *The Last Tycoon*.

## Quoting in APA Style

Consider this **BAD** example in APA style, of what **NOT** to do when quoting evidence:

"If the U.S. scallop fishery were a business, its management would surely be fired, because its revenues could readily be increased by at least 50 percent while its costs were being reduced by an equal percentage." (Repetto, 2001, p. 84).

Again, this is a potentially valuable piece of evidence, but it simply isn't clear what point the research writer is trying to make with it.

Further, it doesn't follow the preferred method of citation with APA style.

Here is a revision that is a **GOOD** or at least **BETTER** example:

Repetto (2001) concludes that in the case of the scallop industry, those running the industry should be held

responsible for not considering methods that would curtail the problems of over-fishing. “If the U.S. scallop fishery were a business, its management would surely be fired, because its revenues could readily be increased by at least 50 percent while its costs were being reduced by an equal percentage” (p. 84).

This revision is improved because the research writer has introduced and explained the point of the evidence with the addition of a clarifying sentence. It also follows the rules of APA style. Generally, APA style prefers that the research writer refer to the author only by last name followed immediately by the year of publication. Whenever possible, you should begin your citation with the author’s last name and the year of publication, and, in the case of a direct quote like this passage, the page number (including the “p.”) in parentheses at the end.

## Paraphrasing in APA Style

Paraphrasing in APA style is slightly different from MLA style as well. Consider first this **BAD** example of what NOT to do in paraphrasing from a source in APA style:

Computer criminals have lots of ways to get away with credit card fraud (Cameron, 2002).

The main problem with this paraphrase is there isn’t enough here to adequately explain to the reader what the point of the evidence really is. Remember: your readers have no way of automatically knowing why you as a research writer think that a particular piece of evidence is useful in supporting your point. This is why it is key that you introduce and explain your evidence.

Here is a revision that is **GOOD** or at least **BETTER**:

Cameron (2002) points out that computer criminals intent on committing credit card fraud are able to take advantage of the fact that there aren’t enough officials working to enforce

computer crimes. Criminals are also able to use the technology to their advantage by communicating via email and chat rooms with other criminals.

Again, this revision is better because the additional information introduces and explains the point of the evidence. In this particular example, the author's name is also incorporated into the explanation of the evidence as well. In APA, it is preferable to weave in the author's name into your essay, usually at the beginning of a sentence. However, it would also have been acceptable to end an improved paraphrase with just the author's last name and the date of publication in parentheses.

## How to Avoid Plagiarism in the Research Process

Plagiarism is the unauthorized or uncredited use of the writings or ideas of another in your writing. While it might not be as tangible as auto theft or burglary, plagiarism is still a form of theft.

In the academic world, plagiarism is a serious matter because ideas in the forms of research, creative work, and original thought are highly valued. Chances are, your school has strict rules about what happens when someone is caught plagiarizing. The penalty for plagiarism is severe, everything from a failing grade for the plagiarized work, a failing grade for the class, or expulsion from the institution.

You might not be aware that plagiarism can take several different forms. The most well known, **purposeful plagiarism**, is handing in an essay written by someone else and representing it as your own, copying your essay word for word from a magazine or journal, or downloading an essay from the Internet.

A much more common and less understood phenomenon is what I call **accidental plagiarism**. Accidental plagiarism is the result of improperly paraphrasing, summarizing, quoting, or citing your evidence in your academic writing. Generally, writers accidentally

plagiarize because they simply don't know or they fail to follow the rules for giving credit to the ideas of others in their writing. Both purposeful and accidental plagiarism are wrong, against the rules, and can result in harsh punishments. Ignoring or not knowing the rules of how to not plagiarize and properly cite evidence might be an *explanation*, but it is not an excuse. To exemplify what I'm getting at, consider the examples below that use quotations and paraphrases from this brief passage:

Those who denounce cyberculture today strangely resemble those who criticized rock music during the fifties and sixties. Rock started out as an Anglo-American phenomenon and has become an industry. Nonetheless, it was able to capture the hopes of young people around the world and provided enjoyment to those of us who listened to or played rock.

Sixties pop was the conscience of one or two generations that helped bring the war in Vietnam to a close. Obviously, neither rock nor pop has solved global poverty or hunger. But is this a reason to be "against" them? (ix).

And just to make it clear that I'm not plagiarizing this passage, here is the citation in MLA style:

Lévy, Pierre. *Cyberculture*. Trans. Robert Bononno. Minneapolis: U of Minnesota P, 2001.

Here's an obvious example of plagiarism:

Those who denounce cyberculture today strangely resemble those who criticized rock music during the fifties and sixties.

In this case, the writer has literally taken one of Lévy's sentences and represented it as her own. That's clearly against the rules.

Here's another example of plagiarism, perhaps less obvious:

The same kind of people who criticize cyberculture are the same kind of people who criticized rock and roll music back in the fifties and sixties. But both cyberculture and rock music inspire and entertain young people.

While these aren't Lévy's exact words, they are certainly close enough to constitute a form of plagiarism. And again, even though

you might think that this is a “lesser” form of plagiarism, it’s still plagiarism.

Both of these passages can easily be corrected to make them acceptable quotations or paraphrases.

**In the introduction of his book *Cyberculture*, Pierre Lévy observes that** “Those who denounce cyberculture today strangely resemble those who criticized rock music during the fifties and sixties” **(ix).**

**Pierre Lévy suggests** that the same kind of people who criticize cyberculture are the same kind of people who criticized rock and roll music back in the fifties and sixties.

But both cyberculture and rock music inspire and entertain young people **(ix).**

Note that changing these passages from examples of plagiarism to acceptable examples of a quotation and a paraphrase is extremely easy: properly cite your sources.

This leads to the “golden rule” of avoiding plagiarism:

Always cite your sources. If you are unsure as to whether you should or should not cite a particular claim or reference, you should probably cite your source.

Often, students are unclear as to whether or not they need to cite a piece of evidence because they believe it to be “common knowledge” or because they are not sure about the source of information. When in doubt about whether or not to cite evidence in order to give credit to a source (“common knowledge” or not), you should cite the evidence.

## Plagiarism and the Internet

Sometimes, I think the ease of finding and retrieving information on the World Wide Web makes readers think that this information does not need to be cited. After all, it isn’t a traditional source like

a book or a journal; it is available for “free.” All a research writer needs to do with a web site is “cut and paste” whatever he needs into his essay, right? Wrong!

**You need to cite the evidence you find from the Internet or the World Wide Web the same way you cite evidence from other sources.** To not do this is plagiarism, or, more bluntly, cheating.

Just because the information is “freely” available on the Internet does not mean you can use this information in your academic writing without properly citing it, much in the same way that the information from library journals and books “freely” available to you needs to be cited in order to give credit where credit is due.

It is also not acceptable to simply download graphics from the World Wide Web. Images found on the Internet are protected by copyright laws. Quite literally, taking images from the Web (particularly from commercial sources) is an offense that could lead to legal action. There are places where you can find graphics and clip art that Web publishers have made publicly available for anyone to use, but be sure that the Web site where you find the graphics makes this explicit before you take graphics as your own. In short, you can use evidence from the Web as long as you don’t plagiarize and as long as you properly cite it; don’t take graphics from the Web unless you know the images are in the public domain.

## 38. MLA Format



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online

here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=58#oembed-1>

### Formatting the Works Cited Page (MLA)

Whenever you incorporate outside sources into your own writing, you must provide both in-text citations (within the body of the paper) and full citations (in the works cited page). The in-text citations point your reader toward the full citations in the works cited page.

That's why the first bit of information in your in-text citation (generally, the author's name; if no name is provided, the title of the article/book/webpage) should directly match up with the beginning of your works cited entry for that source. For further information about in-text citations, please read "Formatting In-Text Citations."

For example, let's say I have a quote from Benedict Anderson's *Imagined Communities* in my research paper. Within the body of the paper, following the quote, I include the following in-text citation: (Anderson 56). This information points to the book's entry in my works cited page:

Anderson, Benedict.

*Imagined Communities: Reflections on the Origin and Spread of Nationalism*. London: Verso, 2006. Print.

[Read more...](#)

## Formatting In-text Citations (MLA)

*How might you format your in-text citations so that they're more compliant with MLA guidelines?*

You already know why MLA formatting guidelines are an important part of an academic paper, but let's face it—who can remember all those rules about when and where certain citation information is requisite and when and where particular punctuation is appropriate? Thankfully, memorizing all of MLA's formatting guidelines is not necessary! MLA style guides can be found easily online or in texts like

*The MLA Handbook*, and writers can refer to these resources when they are unclear about a particular MLA style guideline.

Nonetheless, as you create multiple drafts of your composition papers, there are some MLA conventions that you will need to call on time and time again. In particular, as you integrate source material masterfully into your work, you will be required to call on proper in-text citation guidelines repeatedly. It is therefore important that you take the time to memorize the MLA guidelines for in-text citations.

[Read more...](#)

## MLA Checklist

- Is the heading in the upper left-hand corner of the first page?



- Does the heading include:
  - Your name?
  - Your instructor's name?
  - The course name?
  - The date?
- Does the paper have an original title (other than something like "Final Paper")?
  - Is the title presented without being bolded, italicized, or placed in quotation marks
- Read more...

## MLA Template

Read more...

## Exercise: In-text Citations (MLA)

Look at the sentences below, each of which contains an incorrectly formatted in-text citation. Specify the error made in each sentence; then, write a new sentence in which the in-text citation is correctly formatted.

1. The parlor metaphor of writing describes writing as entering into a conversation, as in arriving late and a parlor and talking to guests who have been there long before you have (7).

2. In "Argument as Emergence, Rhetoric as Love," Jim Corder explains that "Everyone is an argument." (1)

3. David Sedaris's  
*Me Talk Pretty One Day* takes place at a school in Paris (Sedaris 1).

Read more...

## 39. Formatting the Works Cited Page (MLA)

Whenever you incorporate outside sources into your own writing, you must provide both in-text citations (within the body of the paper) and full citations (in the works cited page). The in-text citations point your reader toward the full citations in the works cited page.

That's why the first bit of information in your in-text citation (generally, the author's name; if no name is provided, the title of the article/book/webpage) should directly match up with the beginning of your works cited entry for that source.

For example, let's say I have a quote from Benedict Anderson's *Imagined Communities* in my research paper. Within the body of the paper, following the quote, I include the following in-text citation: (Anderson 56). This information points to the book's entry in my works cited page:

Anderson, Benedict. *Imagined Communities: Reflections on the Origin and Spread of Nationalism*. London: Verso, 2006. Print.

When your reader sees the in-text citation in your essay, she may decide that the source might be valuable for her own research. When she looks at the works cited page, she can easily locate the source (because the works cited page is alphabetized and because she has the in-text citation as her referent) and then can use the full citation to retrieve a copy of the source for her own research. But aside from providing the reader with resources for her own research, the works cited page serves another function: it establishes the writer's credibility. If a writer fails to include in-text citations and/or a works cited page, that writer has plagiarized because he or she has neglected to provide the publication information of the source. In addition, when a reader locates undocumented information in an essay, she will likely think that the

information was made up by the writer or that the information was stolen from a source, or plagiarized. And when a reader peruses a writer's works cited page, she can see the types of sources used by the writer, assessing those sources in terms of their credibility. For instance, if a reader reads my works cited page and sees I cite sources from university presses such as Oxford UP and Cambridge UP, she will know that I've incorporated credible sources into my research paper. Thus, including both in-text citations and a works cited page in a research paper provides the writer with ethos, or credibility.

Now let's take a look at how to properly format a works cited page according to MLA guidelines:

---

Yirinec 38

Works Cited

- Anderson, Benedict. *Imagined Communities: Reflections on the Origin and Spread of Nationalism*. London: Verso, 2006. Print.
- Boucicault, Dion. "Jessie Brown; or, The Relief of Lucknow." *Plays by Dion Boucicault*. Ed Peter Thompson. Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1984. Print.
- Bratlinger, Patrick. *Rule of Darkness: British Literature and Imperialism, 1830–1914*. Ithaca: Cornell UP, 1988. Print.
- Carens, Timothy. *Outlandish English Subjects in the Victorian Domestic Novel*. Cambridge: Palgrave, 2005. Print.
- Collins, Wilkie. *The Moonstone*. Mineola, NY: Dover, 2002. Print.
- Darwin, Charles. *The Voyage of the Beagle*. New York: Modern Library, 2001. Print.
- Doyle, Sir Arthur Conan. *The Sign of the Four*. London: Aziloth Books, 2010. Print.
- Haggard, H. Rider. *She*. Breinigsville, PA: Dodo, 2011. Print.
- Herbert, Christopher. *War of No Pity: The Indian Mutiny and Victorian Trauma*. Princeton: Princeton UP, 2008. Print.

## Placement

According to MLA guidelines, the works cited page should appear after the body of your paper and any accompanying endnotes. It should begin on a new page, and the pagination should continue from the body of the paper. In the above example, the works cited page begins on page 38, which means that the essay concluded on page 37.

## General Format

The works cited page should be double-spaced throughout. The first line of each entry should be flush with the left margin; if the entry extends more than one line, ensuing lines should be indented 1/2 inch from the left margin. The first page of the works cited list should have the title “Works Cited,” not “Bibliography.” The works cited title should appear in the same manner as the paper’s title: capitalized and centered—not bolded, within quotation marks, italicized, underlined, or in a larger font.

## Entries

The entries should be alphabetized based on the author’s last name. According to MLA guidelines, author names come first in an entry, then titles, then the publication information (city of publication, publisher, and date of publication), and then the type of media—the details for different types of sources vary, but this is the general structure followed. Note that if the city is not “well-known” and there is more than one city with that name, unlike New York and London, then the state or territory should be included after the city, e.g., “Roswell, GA: 2006.” If no name is provided for a given source,

the title of the work/webpage will take the place of the author's last name and should still be placed in its proper alphabetical location. Also note that "university" and "press" are always abbreviated "U" and "P" in works cited entries.

Here are some guidelines for commonly used sources:

## Single-Authored Book

Last Name, First Name. *Title of Book*. Place of Publication: Publisher, Date of Publication. Type of media.

Example:

Bratlinger, Patrick. *Rule of Darkness: British Literature and Imperialism, 1830–1914*. Ithaca: Cornell UP, 1988. Print.

## Book with Multiple Authors

Last Name, First Name (of first author listed), and First Name Last Name (of second author, etc.).

*Title of Book*. Place of Publication: Publisher, Date of Publication. Type of media.

Example:

Sabherhagen, Fred, and James V. Hart. *Bram Stoker's Dracula: A Francis Ford Coppola Film*. New York: Signet, 1992. Print.

## Article or Chapter in an Edited Collection (or Textbook)

Last Name, First Name. "Article Title." *Title of Book*. Ed. First Name

Last Name (of Editor). Place of Publication: Publisher, Date of Publication. Page Range of Article. Type of Media.

Example:

Vieregge, Quentin. "Writing as Process." *Negotiating Writing Spaces*. Ed. Jennifer Yirinec and Lauren Cutlip. Plymouth, MI: Hayden-McNeil, 2011. 57–59. Print.

## Article in a Print Journal

Last Name, First Name. "Article Title." *Title of Journal*. Volume #.Issue # (Date of publication): Page Range of Article. Print.

Example:

Rogers, Pat. "Crusoe's Home." *Essays in Criticism* 24.4 (Oct. 1974): 375–90. Print.

## Journal Article Accessed Using an Electronic Database

Last Name, First Name. "Article Title." *Journal Name* Volume #.Issue # (Date of publication): Page Range of Article. *Database*. Web. Date of Access.

Example:

Lamont, Rose C. "Coma versus Comma: John Donne's Holy Sonnets in Edson's WIT." *The Massachusetts Review* 40.4 (Winter 1999–2000): 569–75. JSTOR. Web. 30 April 2012.

## Article Accessed from an Online Journal

Last Name, First Name. "Article Title." *Journal Name* Volume #.Issue # (Date of publication): n.pag. Web. Date of Access.

Example:

Haynsworth, Leslie. "All the Detective's Men: Binary Coding of Masculine Identity in the Sherlock Holmes Stories." *Victorians Institute Journal* 38 (2010): n.pag. Web. 16 May 2012.

## Article from a Webpage

Last Name, First Name (if given). "Title of Webpage." *Website Title*. Publisher of website (often found at the bottom of the page), date of last update. Web. Date of Access. See (URL is only necessary if you think your reader won't easily be able to locate the webpage).

Example:

"Opening Night: Wit Starring Cynthia Nixon." *Broadway.com*. Broadway.com, Inc., 2012. Web. 12 Feb. 2012.

## Entire Website

*Website Title*. Publisher of website, date of last update. Date of Access. See (URL is only necessary if you think your reader won't easily be able to locate the webpage).

Example:

*Broadway.com*. Broadway.com, Inc., 2012. Web. 12 Feb. 2012.

For information about how to format the works cited entries for different sources, consult *The MLA Handbook for Writers of Research Papers* (7th edition). Or, consult the Purdue OWL.

## 40. Citing Paraphrases and Summaries (APA)

### How should a paraphrased passage be cited?

When paraphrasing a passage, it is essential to express the ideas of the author in your own original words; however, the author's message and meaning should always be preserved.

Charges of plagiarism can be avoided by including the proper citation of the work you are drawing from in your paraphrase. The APA requires a paraphrase to include the author's last name and the work's year of publication, but also suggests that the page number of the original text be included.

### Let's look at an example of a cited paraphrase:

**Original text:** "A yellow flower is yellow because it reflects yellow light and absorbs other wavelengths. The red glass of a stained glass window is red because it transmits red light and absorbs other wavelengths. The process by which we perceive the colours of natural objects around us can therefore be described as a 'subtractive' process" (Pender, 1998, p. 14). [1]

**Paraphrase:** Pender explains that through *subtractive process*, humans see the color of objects based on the wavelengths of light that are absorbed by each object (Pender, 1998, p. 14). [1]

**Note:** *The paraphrase maintains the ideas of the original passage while expressing the message in a new voice. The original author is also cited properly.*



## *How should a summarized passage or work be cited?*

When summarizing a passage or work from another writer, briefly outline in your own original words the major ideas presented in the source material. As brevity is the key feature of a summary, it is essential to express the main concepts of the original passage in as concise a manner as possible. Consider using a summary—rather than a short or block quotation—when preserving the original wording of the source material is not necessary for the reader to understand the ideas under discussion.

### *Let's look at an example of a cited summary:*

**Original text:** “In their everyday life, people generally assume that they see the world around them the way it really is. When camping in Colorado, hikers believe they see the horizon as dotted with snow-covered mountaintops. When laying on the beach in North Carolina, sunbathers believe they see pelicans flying above the breaking waves. And these people would nearly always be right. Indeed, it is difficult to imagine notbelieving that the sights and sounds delivered to conscious awareness by perceptual systems are accurate renderings of the outside world. It would be difficult to know how to act if one could not trust one’s senses to accurately report what the world outside is like” (Balcetis, 2010, p. 77). [2]

**Summary:** In *Social Psychology of Visual Perception*, Balcetis (2010) argues that because humans rely on the sensory information received from their body, they form preconceived beliefs about their surroundings that manifest as imaginary visual occurrences (p. 77). [2]

**Note:** *The summary maintains the ideas of the original passage while concisely expressing its main concepts. The original author is also cited properly.*

*How should multiple sources be cited in a single parenthetical reference?*

If multiple works need to be cited in the same set of parentheses, simply arrange them in alphabetical order by the author's last names, or the order in which they would be listed in the References page. Use a semicolon to separate each work from the next one.

*Let's look at an example of multiple authors being cited:*

In the past thirty years, Parkinson's disease has been written about extensively by recognized figures in the field (Dorros, 1989; Duvoisin, 1991; Hauser & Zesiewicz, 1996). [3][4][5]

**Note:** This example includes the in-text citations of three works arranged in alphabetical order by authors' names, separated by semi-colons, and enclosed in parentheses.

*See also:*

- Formatting In-text Citations (APA)

---

[1] Pender, K. (1998). *Digital colour in graphic design*. Burlington, VT: Elsevier Science & Technology.

[2] Balcetis, E. (2010). *Social psychology of visual perception*. Hoboken, NJ: Taylor & Francis.

[3] Dorros, S. (1989). *Parkinson's: A patient's view*. Cabin John, MD: Seven Locks Press.

[4] Duvoisin, R. C. (1991). *Parkinson's disease: A guide for patient and family*. New York, NY: Raven Press.

[5] Hauser, R. A., & Zesiewicz, T. A. (1996). *Parkinson's disease: Questions and answers*. Coral Springs, FL: Merit.

# 4I. APA Citation Style, 6th edition: General Style Guidelines

## General Guidelines for Writing a Paper: APA Style

- All sources of information and data, whether quoted directly or paraphrased, are cited with parenthetical references in the text of your paper (*p. 170*).

**Example:** (Walker, 2003).

- Double-space your entire paper, including the References list and any block quotes (*pp.171, 180*).

## Citations In Text

### How to Cite a Direct Quote (*pp.170-171*)

When you incorporate a direct quotation into a sentence, you must cite the source. Fit quotations within your sentences, enclosed in quotation marks, making sure the sentences are grammatically correct.

Gibaldi (2003, p. 109) indicates that, “Quotations are effective in research papers when used selectively.”

Remember that “[q]uotations are effective in research papers

when used selectively” (Gibaldi, 2003, p. 109).

In 2003, Gibaldi wrote that, “Quotations are effective in research papers when used selectively” (p. 109).

If a quotation is 40 words or more, **omit quotation marks** and use a block format in which the quotation is indented about ½ inch (or 5 spaces) from the left margin.

## How to Cite Summaries or Paraphrases

Even if you put information in your own words by summarizing or paraphrasing, you must cite the original author or researcher and the date of publication. You are also encouraged to provide a page or paragraph number; check with your instructor to see if page numbers are required.

For example, a paraphrase of Gibaldi’s earlier quotation might be identified as follows:

Within the research paper, quotations will have more impact when used judiciously (Gibaldi, 2003, p. 109).

You may want to check out *The Owl at Purdue* for more tips on paraphrasing.

## How to Cite Sources when the Primary Authors have the same Surname (*p.176*)

If two or more of your sources are written by authors with the same surname, include the first author’s initials with the surname in every in-text reference.

**Example:** Among studies, we review M. A. Light and Light

(2008) and I. Light (2006) ...

## How to Cite Different Numbers of Authors

When a work has **2 authors**, cite both names every time the reference occurs. When a work has **3-5 authors**, cite all the names the first time the reference occurs; in subsequent citations, use the surname of the first author followed by et al. When a work has **6+ authors**, use the surname of the first author followed by et al. every time the reference occurs in the text (p.175).

**Note:** There is a helpful chart on how to cite references with different numbers of authors on page 177 of the Manual.

## How to Cite Information If No Page Numbers Are Available (*pp.171-172*)

If a resource contains no page numbers, as can be the case with electronic sources, then you cannot include a page number in the parentheses. However, if the source indicates paragraph numbers, use the abbreviation “para” and the relevant number in the parentheses. If the paragraph number is not visible, cite the heading and the paragraph number following it.

As Myers (2000, para. 5) aptly phrased it...

(Beutler, 2000, Conclusion, para. 1)

## How to Cite Information When You Have Not Seen the Original Source (p.178)

Sometimes an author writes about research that someone else has done, but you are unable to track down the original research report. In this case, because you did not read the original report, you will include only the source you did consult in your References. The words “as cited in” in the parenthetical reference indicate you have not read the original research.

Fong’s 1987 study (as cited in Bertram, 1996) found that older students’ memory can be as good as that of young people, but this depends on how memory is tested. [Do not include Fong (1987) in your References; do include Bertram (1996).]

## How to Cite when you are Altering a Direct Quote

When you need to leave out part of a quotation to make it fit grammatically or because it contains irrelevant/unnecessary information, insert ellipses (pp.172-173).

If you must add or slightly change words within a quotation for reasons of grammar or clarity, indicate the change with square brackets (p.173).

## Creating a Reference List

- Start the Reference list on a new page and include the word

“References” in uppercase and lowercase centered. (pp, 180-192)

- The References list should be double-spaced. Each entry should be formatted with a hanging indent (p.180).
- References cited in text must appear in the References list and vice versa. The only exceptions to this rule are personal communications and classical works; they are cited in text only and are not included in the References list (p.174).
- Use **ONLY** the initial(s) of the author’s given name, **NOT** the full name (p.184).
- If the References list includes 2 or more entries by the same author(s), list them in chronological order with the earliest first (p. 182).
- If the author’s name is unavailable, use the first few words of the title of the article, book or Web source, including the appropriate capitalization and italics formatting (pp.176-177). E.g. (Scientists Say, 2000).
- Arrange References entries in one alphabetical sequence by the surname of the first author or by title or first word if there is no author (pp.181-183). Ignore the words A, An, and The when alphabetizing by title.
- In titles and subtitles of articles, chapters, and books, capitalize only the first letter of the first word and any proper nouns, except in parenthetical (in text) citations (p.185).
- Italicize book titles, journal titles, and volume numbers. Do **NOT** italicize issue numbers.
- Do **NOT** include retrieval dates unless the source of the material may change over time such as a blog entry or wikis. (p.192)



- If a **Digital Object Identifier (DOI)** is listed on either a print or an electronic source it is included in the reference (*pp.188-192*). A DOI is a unique alphanumeric string that is used to identify a certain source (typically journal articles). It is often found on the first page of an article. Example: doi:10.1080/14622200410001676305
- When the References entry includes a URL that must be divided between two lines, break it **BEFORE** a slash or dash or at another logical division point. Do **NOT** insert a hyphen if you need to break a URL or a period at the end of the URL. (*p.192*).
- For a helpful list of some of the abbreviations used in References (such as Vols. for Volumes) check out page 180 of the *APA Manual*.

## Subject Guide



Gisela Butera  
[Email Me](#)



PART IV

# DEFINITION ESSAY



## 42. Definitional Argument Essay

For a definitional essay, you need to write an argument that a borderline or contested case fits (or does not fit) within a particular category by classifying that particular case and defining the category.

**Definitional arguments require a definition of key terms:**

**Example:** Joe is too bossy.

Define “bossy” and provide examples of his bossy attitude (poor listening skills, shouting at people, making decisions without asking committee—these are what define “bossy” in your argument.

**Example:** Low-carb diets are dangerous.

Define what constitutes “low-carb” and define what you mean by “dangerous.” Cite studies showing harmful effects, how substances affect the body, etc.

**Criteria-Match Structure:**

The **criteria** section of your argument explains and illustrates your criteria.

The **match** section of your argument persuades the reader that your example meets those criteria.

**Example:** Although the Hercules Shoe Company is nonpolluting and provides a socially useful product, **[CLAIM]** it is not a socially responsible company **[BECAUSE CLAUSE]** because it treats its workers unjustly.

**Criteria Part:** What points must be met for a company to be deemed “socially responsible”?

- (1) Research how others have defined your term (dictionaries, judicial opinions, expert testimony, etc.
- (2) Use your own critical thinking to make your own extended definition.

**Match Part:** In what ways does the shoe company meet those points?

- (1) Supply examples of how this and other situations meet your criteria.
- (2) Give other evidence about how your example meets your criteria.

## For your Definitional Argument Essay:

1. introduce the issue and state the claim
2. define key terms
3. present your first criterion and argument that your case meets your definition
4. present your second criterion and argument that your case meets your definition

5. present your third criterion and argument that your case meets your definition (if necessary)
6. anticipate and respond to possible objections/arguments
7. conclude with return to the “big picture,” what is at stake, why your argument is important, etc.

## Definitional Argument Essay Proposal

- What vague or arguable term, phrase, or situation are you defining?
- What scenario are you going to use to introduce your claim?
- What is your first (1) criterion and (2) argument that your case meets your definition?
- What is your second (1) criterion and (2) argument that your case meets your definition?
- What is your third (1) criterion and (2) argument that your case meets your definition?
- What are your (1) anticipated objections/arguments and (2) responses to them?
- How will you conclude with return to the “big picture,” what is at stake, why your argument is important, etc?

# 43. How to Write a Definition Essay

A definition essay can be deceptively difficult to write. This type of paper requires you to write a personal yet academic definition of one specific word. The definition must be thorough and lengthy. It is essential that you choose a word that will give you plenty to write about, and there are a few standard tactics you can use to elaborate on the term. Here are a few guidelines to keep in mind when writing a definition essay.

## Part 1 of 3: Choosing the Right Word

### **1: Choose an abstract word with a complex meaning.**<sup>[1]</sup>

A simple word that refers to a concrete word will not give you much to write about, but a complex word that refers to an abstract concept provides more material to explore.

- Typically, nouns that refer to a person, place, or thing are too simple for a definition essay. Nouns that refer to an idea work better, however, as do most adjectives.
- For example, the word “house” is fairly simple and an essay written around it may be dull. By switching to something slightly more abstract like “home,” however, you can play around with the definition more. A “home” is a concept, and there are many elements involved in the creation of a “home.” In comparison, a “house” is merely a structure.



## **2: Make sure that the word is disputable.**

Aside from being complex, the word should also refer to something that can mean different things to different people.

- A definition essay is somewhat subjective by nature since it requires you to analyze and define a word from your own perspective. If the answer you come up with after analyzing a word is the same answer anyone else would come up with, your essay may appear to lack depth.

## **3: Choose a word you have some familiarity with.**

Dictionary definitions can only tell you so much. Since you need to elaborate on the word you choose to define, you will need to have your own base of knowledge or experience with the concept you choose.

- For instance, if you have never heard the term “pedantic,” your understanding of the word will be limited. You can introduce yourself to the word for your essay, but without previous understanding of the concept, you will not know if the definition you describe is truly fitting.

## 4: Read the dictionary definition.

While you will not be relying completely on the dictionary definition for your essay, familiarizing yourself with the official definition will allow you to compare your own understanding of the concept with the simplest, most academic explanation of it.

- As an example, one definition of “friend” is “a person attached to another by feelings of affection or personal regard.”<sup>[2]</sup> Your own ideas or beliefs about what a “friend” really is likely include much more information, but this basic definition can present you with a good starting point in forming your own.

## 5: Research the word’s origins.

Look up your chosen word in the *Oxford English Dictionary* or in another etymology dictionary.<sup>[3]</sup>

- These sources can tell you the history behind a word, which can provide further insight on a general definition as well as information about how a word came to mean what it means today.

## Part 2 of 3: Potential Elements of an Effective Definition

### 1: Write an analysis.<sup>[4]</sup>

Separate a word into various parts. Analyze and define each part in its own paragraph.

- You can separate “return” into “re-” and “turn.” The word “friendship” can be separated into “friend” and “ship.”
- In order to analyze each portion of a word, you will still need to use additional defining tactics like negation and classification.
- Note that this tactic only works for words that contain multiple parts. The word “love,” for instance, cannot be broken down any further. If defining “platonic love,” though, you could define both “platonic” and “love” separately within your essay.

### 2: Classify the term.

Specify what classes and parts of speech a word belongs to according to a standard dictionary definition.

- While this information is very basic and dry, it can provide helpful context about the way that a given word is used.

### 3: Compare an unfamiliar term to something

## **familiar.**

An unfamiliar or uncommon concept can be explained using concepts that are more accessible to the average person.

- Many people have never heard of the term “confrere,” for instance. One basic definition is “a fellow member of a profession, fraternity, etc.” As such, you could compare “confrere” with “colleague,” which is a similar yet more familiar concept.<sup>[5]</sup>

## **4: Provide traditional details about the term.**

Explain any physical characteristics or traditional thoughts used to describe your term of choice.

- The term “home” is often visualized physically as a house or apartment. In more abstract terms, “home” is traditionally thought to be a warm, cozy, and safe environment. You can include all of these features in a definition essay on “home.”

## **5: Use examples to illustrate the meaning.**

People often relate to stories and vivid images, so using a fitting story or image that relates to the term can be used in clarifying an abstract, formless concept.

- In a definition essay about “kindness,” for example, you could write about an act of kindness you recently witnessed. Someone who mows the lawn of an elderly neighbor is a valid example, just as someone who gave you an encouraging word when you were feeling down might be.

## **6: Use negation to explain what the term does not mean.**

If a term is often misused or misunderstood, mentioning what it is not is an effective way to bring the concept into focus.

- A common example would be the term “courage.” The term is often associated with a lack of fear, but many will argue that “courage” is more accurately described as acting in spite of fear.

## **7: Provide background information.**

This is when your research about the etymology of a word will come in handy. Explain where the term originated and how it came to mean what it currently means.

## Part 3 of 3: Definition Essay Structure

### 1: Introduce the standard definition.

You need to clearly state what your word is along with its traditional or dictionary definition in your introductory paragraph.

- By opening with the dictionary definition of your term, you create context and a basic level of knowledge about the word. This will allow you to introduce and elaborate on your own definition.
- This is especially significant when the traditional definition of your term varies from your own definition in notable ways.

### 2: Define the term in your own words in your thesis.

Your actual thesis statement should define the term in your own words.

- Keep the definition in your thesis brief and basic. You will elaborate on it more in the body of your paper.
- Avoid using passive phrases involving the word “is” when defining your term. The phrases “is where” and “is when” are especially clunky.<sup>[6]</sup>
- Do not repeat part of the defined term in your definition.

### **3: Separate different parts of the definition into separate paragraphs.**

Each tactic or method used to define your term should be explored in a separate paragraph.

- Note that you do not need to use all the possible methods of defining a term in your essay. You should use a variety of different methods in order to create a full, well-rounded picture of the term, but some tactics will work great with some terms but not with others.

### **4: Conclude with a summary of your main points.**

Briefly summarize your main points around the start of your concluding paragraph.

- This summary does not need to be elaborate. Usually, looking at the topic sentence of each body paragraph is a good way to form a simple list of your main points.
- You can also draw the essay to a close by referring to phrases or images evoked in your introduction.

## 5: Mention how the definition has affected you, if desired.

If the term you define plays a part in your own life and experiences, your final concluding remarks are a good place to briefly mention the role it plays.

- Relate your experience with the term to the definition you created for it in your thesis. Avoid sharing experiences that relate to the term but contradict everything you wrote in your essay.

## Sources and Citations

1. <http://www.roanestate.edu/owl/Definition.html>
2. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/friend?s=t>
3. <http://www.etymonline.com/>
4. <http://leo.stcloudstate.edu/acadwrite/definition.html>
5. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/confreere?s=t>
6. <http://grammar.ccc.commnet.edu/grammar/composition/definition.htm>



## 44. Critical Thinking

Critical thinking helps readers evaluate the credibility of an argument.

### *LEARNING OBJECTIVES*

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Explain how thinking critically about another author's work can improve your own
- Judge whether or not an author's argument is solid or in need of improvement using critical thinking

### *EXAMPLES*

- Critical thinking is a vital skill for students taking writing-intensive courses in unfamiliar disciplines. The humanities, natural sciences, and

social sciences all utilize an arsenal of critical thinking skills, analytical methods, and theoretical material; critical thinking enables you to apply theories or methods from your area of expertise to another, and vice versa. You may even find commonalities between your discipline and the unfamiliar subject that you can use to expand the scope of your work or add a fresh perspective.

- Discovering a flaw in another source's argument can inspire great paper ideas. An argument that directly engages with other writers in your discipline will make your work automatically relevant. This approach also demonstrates an active engagement with the current discourse surrounding your topic. As you read other sources, ask analytical questions to see if you can uncover any flaws or inconsistencies: Are key terms clearly defined, and do you agree with those definitions? Are the writers experts in their field? Upon what assumptions and theoretical frameworks do the argument rely? Are these assumptions and frameworks appropriate for the discipline? Is the methodology valid? Does the argument have consistent logic? Are the style and organization appropriate, or do they obscure certain details? What is the intended audience for this work? What is the author's intent in writing this work? Does the author have any ulterior motives or conflicts of interest that might undermine credibility?
- French philosopher Michel Foucault based his

famous book, *The History of Sexuality*, on his belief that the popular “repressive hypothesis” is a flawed. The repressive hypothesis suggests that the nineteenth century marked a rapid escalation in our centuries-old progression toward repressing sexual drives and discouraging conversations about sexuality. Foucault contends that, while references to sexuality became increasingly coded and symbolic in the nineteenth century, discussion of sexual matters actually increased. He cites examples of unprecedented expectations for official sexual disclosures in the nineteenth century, such as the Catholic Church’s focus on increasing the frequency and formal importance of confession. Foucault mocks his contemporaries as the “Other Victorians,” unable to stop talking about how they cannot talk about sexuality.

- Anthropologist Claude Lévi-Strauss’ research plays an important role in Jacques Derrida’s landmark book *Of Grammatology*. The connection between the two thinkers is not immediately obvious: Derrida is primarily known for his theories about literary interpretation and linguistics; Derrida finds common ground with Lévi-Strauss, however, in their shared interest in the relationship between speech and writing. When he discusses Lévi-Strauss’ field research on native languages, Derrida reveals assumptions about the origin of language in a way that enriches his own text-based approach.

In researching the status quo, you will probably come across work by other writers that you would like to use in your own writing. This can be a very successful argument strategy when done properly. Using sources well means doing more than just repeating what other authors say; you need to engage with your source text – comment on it, argue with it, analyze it, expand upon it. To do any of those things, you need to start with a thorough and accurate understanding of the other authors' work.

This level of understanding begins with thinking critically about the texts you are reading. In this case, “critically” does not mean that you are looking for what is wrong with a work (although in the course of your critical process, you may well do that). Instead, thinking critically means approaching a work as if you were a critic or commentator. Your primary goal is to evaluate the text at hand.

This is an essential step in analyzing a text, and it requires you to consider many different aspects of a writer's work. Do not just consider what the text says. Think about what effect the author intended to produce in a reader. Look at the process through which the writer achieves (or does not achieve) the desired effect, and which rhetorical strategies are being used. If you disagree with a text, what is the point of contention? If you agree with it, how do you think you can expand or build upon the argument put forth?

Critical thinking has many uses. If you apply it to a work of literature, for example, it can become the foundation of a detailed textual analysis. With scholarly articles, critical thinking can help you evaluate their potential reliability as future sources. Finding an error in someone else's argument can be the point of destabilization you need to make a worthy argument of your own. Critical thinking can even help you hone your own argumentation skills, since it requires you to think carefully about which strategies are effective for making arguments.

## *Key Points*

- Critical thinking is a method of approaching texts that calls for a reader to consider what the author is arguing and how he or she makes that argument.
- Critical thinking is one of the first essential steps in analyzing and writing about a text, topic, or argument.
- Thinking critically about other writers' work can help you improve your own. By applying the same critical standards you use when reading someone else's work to your own, you can greatly increase the clarity, accuracy, and value of your work.

## *Terms*

- status quo
  - The state of things; the way things are, as opposed to the way they could be; the existing state of affairs.
- critical thinking
  - A method of thinking involving analysis and evaluation. It questions assumptions with the goal of deciding whether a claim is always true, sometimes true, partly true, or false.

## 45. Video: Thesis Explained

This lecture covers:

- Review of Expository Essays and Elements
- What a Thesis is
- Important parts of a Thesis
- Tips for writing a quality thesis



*One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=66#oembed-1>*

# 46. Effective Thesis Statements

## What is a Thesis Statement?

- A thesis statement tells a reader how you will interpret the significance of the subject matter under discussion. Such a statement is also called an “argument,” a “main idea,” or a “controlling idea.”
- A good thesis has two parts. It should tell what you plan to argue, and it should “telegraph” how you plan to argue—that is, what particular support for your claim is going where in your essay
- A standard place for your thesis is at the end of the introductory paragraph.
- A thesis is an interpretation of a subject, not the subject itself. The subject, or topic, of an essay might be World War II or Moby Dick; a thesis must then offer a way to understand the war or the novel that others might dispute.
- A strong thesis not only grabs the interest of your reader, who now wants to see you support your unique interpretation, it also provides a focus for your argument, one to which every part of your paper refers in the development of your position.
- A thesis keeps the writer centered on the matter at hand and reduces the risk of intellectual wandering. Likewise, a thesis provides the reader with a “road map,” clearly laying out the intellectual route ahead.
- A thesis statement avoids the first person (“I believe,” “In my opinion”).

## A simple equation for what a thesis might look like this:

What you plan to argue + How you plan to argue it = Thesis  
Specific Topic+ Attitude/Angle/Argument=Thesis

### Steps To Write Effective Thesis Statement

- Choose a prompt or, if appropriate, select a topic: *television violence and children*
- Read the prompt carefully or, if appropriate, ask an interesting question:
  - ***What are the effects of television violence on children?***
- Revise the prompt or question into a preliminary or “working” thesis:
  - ***Violence on television increases aggressive behavior in children.***
- Avoid general phrasing and/or sweeping words such as “all” or “none” or “every”.
- Lead the reader toward the topic sentences (the subtopics needed to prove the thesis).
- Anticipate the counter-arguments. Once you have a working thesis, you should think about what might be said against it. This will help you to refine your thesis, and it will also make you think of the arguments that you’ll need to refute later on in your essay. (Every argument has a counter-argument. If yours doesn’t, then it’s not an argument—it may be a fact, or an opinion, but it is not an argument.)
  - ***Violence on television increases aggressive behavior in children.***
- This statement is **on its way** to being a thesis. However, it is



too easy to imagine possible counter- arguments. For example, an observer of societal trends may believe that parenting or easy access to weapons are important factors in youth violence. If you *complicate* your thesis by anticipating the counter-argument, you'll strengthen your argument, as shown in the sentence below.

- ***While poor parenting and easy access to weapons may act as contributory factors, in fact when children are exposed to television violence they become less sensitive to the pain and suffering of others, are more fearful of the world around them, and are more likely to behave in aggressive or harmful ways toward others.***

## The Components of an Effective Thesis Statement

- You can't just pluck a thesis out of thin air. Even if you have a terrific insight concerning a topic, it won't be worth much unless you can logically and persuasively support it in the body of your essay. A thesis is the evolutionary result of a thinking process, not a miraculous creation. Formulating a thesis is not the first thing you do after reading an essay assignment.
- An effective thesis statement fulfills the following criteria
  - **Substantial**– Your thesis should be a claim for which it is easy to answer every reader's question: "So what?"
  - **Supportable** – A thesis must be a claim that you can prove with the evidence at hand (e.g., evidence from your texts or from your research). Your claim should not be outlandish, nor should it be mere personal opinion or preference (e.g., "Frederick Douglass is my favorite historical figure.") It tackles a subject that could be adequately covered in the format of the project assigned.

- **Precise** – It is focused and specific. A strong thesis proves a point without discussing everything. It clearly asserts your own conclusion based on evidence. Note: Be flexible. It is perfectly okay to change your thesis!
- **Arguable** – It should be contestable, proposing an arguable point with which people could reasonably disagree.
- **Relevant** – If you are responding to an assignment, the thesis should answer the question your teacher has posed. In order to stay focused, pay attention to the task words in the assignment: summarize, argue, compare/contrast, etc.
- **Aware of Counters**– It anticipates and refutes the counter-arguments.

**The best thesis statement is a balance of specific details and concise language. Your goal is to articulate an argument in detail without burdening the reader with too much information.**

## Questions To Review Your Thesis

- “Do I answer the question?” This might seem obvious, but it’s worth asking. No matter how intriguing or dazzling, a thesis that doesn’t answer the question is not a good thesis!
- “Have I taken a position that others might challenge or oppose?” If not, then you probably do not have a strong argument. Theses that are too vague often have this problem. If your thesis contains vague words like “good” or “successful,” see if you could be more specific: why is something “good”; what makes something “successful”?
- Would anyone possible care about this thesis? So What? Does your thesis present a position or an interpretation worth pursuing? If a reader’s first response is, “So what?” then you need to clarify, to forge a relationship, or to connect to a larger issue.

- “Does my essay support my thesis specifically and without wandering?” Just as a thesis that doesn’t answer the question ultimately fails, so does a thesis that isn’t properly supported with evidence and reasoning.
- Does my thesis statement adequately address the direction words of the prompt: summarize, argue, compare/contrast, analyze, discuss, etc.?

## Myths about Thesis Statements

- Every paper requires one. Assignments that ask you to write personal responses or to explore a subject don’t want you to seem to pre-judge the issues. Essays of literary interpretation often want you to be aware of many effects rather than seeming to box yourself into one view of the text.
- A thesis statement must come at the end of the first paragraph. This is a natural position for a statement of focus, but it’s not the only one. Some theses can be stated in the opening sentences of an essay; others need a paragraph or two of introduction; others can’t be fully formulated until the end.
- A thesis statement must be one sentence in length, no matter how many clauses it contains. Clear writing is more important than rules like these. Use two or three sentences if you need them. A complex argument may require a whole tightly-knit paragraph to make its initial statement of position.
- You can’t start writing an essay until you have a perfect thesis statement. It may be advisable to draft a hypothesis or tentative thesis statement near the start of a big project, but changing and refining a thesis is a main task of thinking your way through your ideas as you write a paper. And some essay projects need to explore the question in depth without being locked in before they can provide even a tentative answer.
- A thesis statement must give three points of support. It should

indicate that the essay will explain and give evidence for its assertion, but points don't need to come in any specific number.

## Progressively Complex Thesis Statements

Thesis Statement	Evaluation
The North and South fought the Civil War for many reasons, some of which were the same and some different.	The worst thesis imaginable (other than non-existent). You've said nothing of value.
While both sides fought the Civil War over the issue of slavery, the North fought for moral reasons while the South fought to preserve its own institutions.	A good pre-draft thesis. Not a bad start at all. Here's the catch, and the time consuming part of the process. As you write, your argument may become more refined or changed. When it does, so should the thesis.
While there were many underlying causes of the Civil War, three factors converged to make conflict inevitable: the issue of slavery, the idea of states' rights, and the fight to control the future of the West.	A solid preview of your argument and the main points you intend to make. This would be a strong approach for a persuasive or exemplification essay.
While both Northerners and Southerners believed they fought against tyranny and oppression, Northerners focused on the oppression of slaves while Southerners defended their own rights to property and self-government.	Bien! The thesis statement is nuanced, recognizing the existence of an opposing point of view, while strongly defending your point. It is relatively specific, yet concise—and doesn't make the reader want to stop reading.

## 47. Student Sample: Definition Essay

Chris Thurman

Cohen

English 111

12/01/10

Extended Definition Essay

When one thinks of the most important quality in a friend or a family member, trust immediately comes to mind. It can be defined as reliance on the integrity, strength, ability, and surety of a person or thing. But what does it really mean? Trust, in simple terms, is faith in another person, despite a lack of an assured outcome.

One characteristic that makes trust unique is its fragility. To gain the trust of a parent or friend, one must continuously prove one's honesty and reliability. To gain the complete trust of someone can take years, but can be lost in a single moment. A perfect example of the delicate nature of trust can be found in marriage. Two spouses must constantly support and be honest with each other to gain real trust. However, this bond can be easily broken if one of the spouses is caught cheating with someone else. Trust in another person can make one feel secure and loved, while broken trust can lead to the feeling of anger and vulnerability.

One very important question arises when examining trust: If one knows the outcome of something before it happens, is there any trust involved? For example, a friend asks to borrow \$10,000 so that he can invest it in a company, and receive more money in return. If one already knew that they would get the money back at the time of the loan, there is no trust involved. However, if the investment seems very risky, and the only thing that made one approve is the friend's promise of success, than genuine trust takes place. The person that is doing the trusting should have faith in the person

making the promise, not in the event itself. Real trust is not tested in times of certainty; rather, genuine trust occurs when we are not certain of the outcome.

Trust can be found in simple things, like a dog relying on his master to feed him, or it can be found in more complex things relationships such as two police officers looking out for each other. Most friendships are based on trust as well. Friends will not let other friends make bad decisions and will expect that others will do the same for them. Trust can be proven to others by doing the right thing even when one is not asked. If other people know that one can handle responsibility and can manage to do the right thing, even when they are not asked, they will not falter in providing friendship and support.

Trust has always been a part of everyone's life whether or not they are aware of it. From the time we are born, we know that our mother will care for us and show us love and affection. In our teenage years we hope that our friends and family alike will support our decisions and correct us if we are wrong. To our college years, we expect that our teachers will accurately grade everything we do. We even expect our spouse to support and love us throughout our adult years. We rely on others to take care of our every need when we are old. Even on the day that we die, we know that our friends and family will be at our funeral to bid us farewell into the afterlife. We hope that there is a heaven and a hell, one of which will be our final destination. But throughout our lives, trust follows us everywhere we go and these trusting relationships that we develop will help lead and guide us. But when it all comes down to it, who can we trust?

PART V

# NARRATIVE ESSAY





# 48. Introduction to Narrative Essay

## Narrative Essay

Reflect for a moment on the last memorable story you heard, told, or read. What made the story remain with you? Was it a compelling character or participant in the action? An interesting set of circumstances? Was it told in an amusing or serious manner, and did it make you react emotionally?

Everyone loves a good story, and each day we seek out good stories in a variety of media: novels, short stories, newspapers, works of fine art, blogs, even notes and posts on social media pages.

Narration is the art of storytelling, and in this module, you will investigate the ways in which writers employ common narration strategies to engage readers from the beginning to the end of a significant event. You will also look critically at some examples of effective narration as you draft your narrative essay.

## Module Outcomes

After successfully completing this module, you should be able to:

1. Describe the purpose, basic components, characteristics, and structure of narrative writing
2. Demonstrate writing techniques of a narrative essay



## 49. Student Sample: Narrative Essay

**Instructions:** Read the student essay, “Melon Harvest,” by J. Workman. First read the NON-ANNOTATED student essay, and then compare it to the ANNOTATED version of the same essay. The purpose of annotation is to help you think deeply about a text as you read it. Notice how the annotated comments analyze and respond to the essay.

This is a model for how to engage with and annotate the writing you will encounter in this course.

### Melon Harvest (Non-Annotated Version)

By J. Workman

At two in the afternoon I drove the five miles from our apartment complex into downtown Texarkana to drop off voter registration forms and mail paperwork about my recent change in residency to my employer. My husband’s job had brought me to this small city straddling the border of Texas and Arkansas, where everything still felt quaint and unfamiliar.

Driving home down Jefferson Avenue on the Arkansas side of town I passed a grocery store parking lot where a farmer had parked his beat-up truck and shoddy trailer under a faded awning. The trailer was loaded up with the last of his watermelon harvest—late season, probably sweet as they come. The truck bed held early season sweet potatoes. End of the summer fare and beginning of the winter stores, all in one load. The farmer’s back was facing me as he helped a woman buying watermelons. His arms were huge and his

shoulders wider than a yardstick. He was tall, big, sunburned on his neck and upper arms.

Without warning, tears filled my eyes. Although this farmer was a stranger to me, I recognized his profile. I knew his stories, including the toil, drudgery and poverty that too often mark a hard-working farmer's life. That life was just two generations back for me: my Grandma Wanda grew up a farmer's daughter. Great Grandpa George was a farmer and cowhand and blacksmith and sheep shearer and whatever else he could do to put food on the table.

Although rural communities surrounded Texarkana, somehow I was surprised to see this hardscrabble farmer here, now today. He was the real thing. This man wasn't like the hippie organic growers at the Santa Monica farmer's market I visited every Saturday before I moved from L.A. He wasn't a part-timer coming to town only seasonally with a load of grapes or melons. This man was no immigrant laborer from Mexico or El Salvador or Guatemala who came in the 1990s to work the farms on behalf of the white owners. He was not the descendent of Latin American or Asian laborers who came three generations ago and now own farms themselves.

This was a homegrown, Caucasian, American farmer, but the not-quite-Norman Rockwell kind. He was a "dirt farmer," as my new neighbor Billy described the type, himself the son of a sharecropper. He grew whatever he could coax out of the land, working those acres generation after generation to hold onto the family homestead. This farmer was young, early thirties perhaps, close to my own age (although you can't really tell after awhile because farmers take on the age of the earth). Seeing him hit close to home for me, too much a reminder of the hardship and poverty of my own family's roots, uncomfortably manifest today in another family's ongoing hardship.

Wiping my eyes, I realized I was projecting all this onto some random roadside farmer, and I didn't even stop to buy a melon. I thought about it, but I didn't really want to have to eat a whole watermelon on my own. More than that, I didn't know how I would

explain to him the tears I knew would stream from my eyes as I hefted the melon and counted out the bills.

Turning the corner into our apartment complex I passed the Greyhound station just in time to be a voyeur viewing a private moment between a mother and son. She was sending him off, probably to a city somewhere. He was a big, overweight, sloppy but good-natured looking boy. For the second time tears sprang to my eyes, and I couldn't say quite say why. After all, my parents put me on a Greyhound bus to go back to college after the holidays one winter. My father said it was a mandatory life experience, taking the bus to school. When I complained, he told me it was good motivation to finish college and get a good job. I can't say he was wrong about that.

But here in Texarkana my tears flowed again for that mother and son and the harshness of the big city world out beyond this place. I cried for the harshness of my citified eyes judging these homespun people in their quaint small place with its oddities and familiarities, its first names and slow-moving afternoons and churches bigger than stadiums.

I cried for how God must love the humility of a place like this, a town that unobtrusively preserves a Bible in the courthouse and trusts this nation could never do wrong. Perhaps in some ways this is a better place—better than me and the world I'm from. But in some ways it's also a dying place, dying like a field of vines after the melons are harvested, wilting in the sunlight of America's finest hour.

## Annotated Version

Click on the link to view the annotated version of the essay: "Melon Harvest," by J. Workman

## 50. "Shooting an Elephant" by George Orwell

In "Shooting an Elephant," author George Orwell finds himself in a position of authority as an Indian community encounters a rampaging elephant.

Click on the link to view the essay: "Shooting an Elephant" by George Orwell

As you are reading, identify the following:

- The "situation"
- The "complications"
- The "lesson" the author learned from the experience

## 51. "Sixty-nine Cents" by Gary Shteyngart

In "Sixty-nine Cents," author Gary Shteyngart describes a coming-of-age experience as a first-generation Russian-Jewish immigrant in modern America.

Click on the link to view the essay: "Sixty-nine Cents" by Gary Shteyngart

As you are reading, identify the following:

- The "situation"
- The "complications"
- The "lesson" the author learned from the experience.

## 52. Video: The Danger of a Single Story

Our lives, our cultures, are composed of many overlapping stories. Novelist Chimamanda Adichie tells the story of how she found her authentic cultural voice — and warns that if we hear only a single story about another person or country, we risk a critical misunderstanding.



*One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online*

here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=74#oembed-1>



## 53. How to Write an Annotation

One of the greatest challenges students face is adjusting to college reading expectations. Unlike high school, students in college are expected to read more “academic” type of materials in less time and usually recall the information as soon as the next class.

The problem is many students spend hours reading and have no idea what they just read. Their eyes are moving across the page, but their mind is somewhere else. The end result is wasted time, energy, and frustration...and having to read the text again.

Although students are taught *how to read* at an early age, many are not taught *how to actively engage* with written text or other media. Annotation is a tool to help you learn how to actively engage with a text or other media.

View the following video about how to annotate a text.



*One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online*

*here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=75#oembed-1>*

Annotating a text or other media (e.g. a video, image, etc.) is as much about you as it is the text you are annotating. What are YOUR responses to the author’s writing, claims and ideas? What are YOU thinking as you consider the work? Ask questions, challenge, think!

When we annotate an author’s work, our minds should *encounter* the mind of the author, openly and freely. If you met the author at a party, what would you like to tell to them; what would you like to

ask them? What do you think they would say in response to your comments? You can be critical of the text, but you do not have to be. If you are annotating properly, you often begin to get ideas that have little or even nothing to do with the topic you are annotating. That's fine: it's all about generating insights and ideas of your own. Any good insight is worth keeping because it may make for a good essay or research paper later on.

## The Secret is in the Pen

One of the ways proficient readers read is with a pen in hand. They know their purpose is to keep their attention on the material by:

- *Predicting* what the material will be about
- *Questioning* the material to further understanding
- *Determining* what's important
- *Identifying* key vocabulary
- *Summarizing* the material in their own words, and
- *Monitoring* their comprehension (understanding) during and after engaging with the material

The same applies for mindfully viewing a film, video, image or other media.

## Annotating a Text

Review the video, “How to Annotate a Text.” Pay attention to both how to make annotations and what types of thoughts and ideas may be part of your annotations as you actively read a written text.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=75#oembed-2>

## Example Assignment Format: Annotating a Written Text

For the annotation of reading assignments in this class, you will cite and comment on a minimum of FIVE (5) phrases, sentences or passages from notes you take on the selected readings.

Here is an example format for an assignment to annotate a written text:

---

Passage #	Quotation and Location
1	Direct quote (paragraph #)
2	Direct quote (paragraph #)
3	Direct quote (paragraph #)
4	Direct quote (paragraph #)
5	Direct quote (paragraph #)

---

# Example Assignment Format: Annotating Media

In addition to annotating written text, at times you will have assignments to annotate media (e.g., videos, images or other media). For the annotation of media assignments in this class, you will cite and comment on a minimum of THREE (3) statements, facts, examples, research or any combination of those from the notes you take about selected media.

Here is an example format for an assignment to annotate media:

---

Passage #	Describe Passage
1	Passage Description
2	Passage Description
3	Passage Description

---

## 54. How to Write a Summary

Proficient students understand that *summarizing*, identifying what is most important and restating the text (or other media) in your own words, is an important tool for college success.

After all, if you really know a subject, you will be able to summarize it. If you cannot summarize a subject, even if you have memorized all the facts about it, you can be absolutely sure that you have not learned it. And, if you truly learn the subject, you will still be able to summarize it months or years from now.

Proficient students may monitor their understanding of a text by summarizing as they read. They understand that if they can write a one- or two-sentence summary of each paragraph after reading it, then that is a good sign that they have correctly understood it. If they can not summarize the main idea of the paragraph, they know that comprehension has broken down and they need to use fix-up strategies to repair understanding.

### Summary Writing Format

- When writing a summary, remember that it should be in the form of a paragraph.
- A summary begins with an introductory sentence that states the text's title, author and main point of the text as you see it.
- A summary is written in your own words.
- A summary contains only the ideas of the original text. Do not insert any of your own opinions, interpretations, deductions or comments into a summary.
- Identify in order the significant sub-claims the author uses to defend the main point.
- Copy word-for-word three separate passages from the essay

that you think support and/or defend the main point of the essay as you see it.

- Cite each passage by first signaling the work and the author, put “quotation marks” around the passage you chose, and put the number of the paragraph where the passages can be found immediately after the passage.
- Using source material from the essay is important. Why? Because defending claims with source material is what you will be asked to do when writing papers for your college professors.
- Write a last sentence that “wraps” up your summary; often a simple rephrasing of the main point.

## Example Summary Writing Format

In the essay *Santa Ana*, author Joan Didion’s main point is (*state main point*). According to Didion “...*passage 1...*” (para.3). Didion also writes “...*passage 2...*” (para.8). Finally, she states “...*passage 3...*” (para. 12) Write a last sentence that “wraps” up your summary; often a simple rephrasing of the main point.

# 55. Writing for Success: Narration

ANONYMOUS

This section will help you determine the purpose and structure of narration in writing.

## The Purpose of Narrative Writing

*Narration* means the art of storytelling, and the purpose of narrative writing is to tell stories. Any time you tell a story to a friend or family member about an event or incident in your day, you engage in a form of narration. In addition, a narrative can be factual or fictional. A factual story is one that is based on, and tries to be faithful to, actual events as they unfolded in real life. A fictional story is a made-up, or imagined, story; the writer of a fictional story can create characters and events as he or she sees fit.

The big distinction between factual and fictional narratives is based on a writer's purpose. The writers of factual stories try to recount events as they actually happened, but writers of fictional stories can depart from real people and events because the writers' intents are not to retell a real-life event. Biographies and memoirs are examples of factual stories, whereas novels and short stories are examples of fictional stories.

## Know Your Purpose

Because the line between fact and fiction can often blur, it is helpful to understand what your purpose is from the beginning. Is it important that you recount history, either your own or someone else's? Or does your interest lie in reshaping the world in your own image—either how you would like to see it or how you imagine it could be? Your answers will go a long way in shaping the stories you tell.

Ultimately, whether the story is fact or fiction, narrative writing tries to relay a series of events in an emotionally engaging way. You want your audience to be moved by your story, which could mean through laughter, sympathy, fear, anger, and so on. The more clearly you tell your story, the more emotionally engaged your audience is likely to be.

## The Structure of a Narrative Essay

Major narrative events are most often conveyed in chronological order, the order in which events unfold from first to last. Stories typically have a beginning, a middle, and an end, and these events are typically organized by time. Certain transitional words and phrases aid in keeping the reader oriented in the sequencing of a story. Some of these phrases are listed here:

### **Chronological Transitional Words**



after/afterward	as soon as	at last	before
currently	during	eventually	meanwhile
next	now	since	soon
finally	later	still	then
until	when/whenever	while	first, second, third

Other basic components of a narrative are:

- Plot – The events as they unfold in sequence.
- Characters – The people who inhabit the story and move it forward. Typically, there are minor characters and main characters. The minor characters generally play supporting roles to the main character, also known as the protagonist.
- Conflict – The primary problem or obstacle that unfolds in the plot that the protagonist must solve or overcome by the end of the narrative. The way in which the protagonist resolves the conflict of the plot results in the theme of the narrative.
- Theme – The ultimate message the narrative is trying to express; it can be either explicit or implicit.

## Writing a Narrative Essay

When writing a narrative essay, start by asking yourself if you want to write a factual or fictional story. Then freewrite, brainstorm, or mindmap about topics that are of general interest to you. For more information about pre-writing, review the materials in “My Writing Process – Prewriting and Draft.”

Once you have a general idea of what you will be writing about, you should sketch out the major events of the story that will

compose your plot. Typically, these events will be revealed chronologically and climax at a central conflict that must be resolved by the end of the story. The use of strong details is crucial as you describe the events and characters in your narrative. You want the reader to emotionally engage with the world that you create in writing.

## Keep the Senses in Mind

To create strong details, keep the human senses in mind. You want your reader to be immersed in the world that you create, so focus on details related to sight, sound, smell, taste, and touch as you describe people, places, and events in your narrative.

As always, it is important to start with a strong introduction to hook your reader into wanting to read more. Try opening the essay with an event that is interesting to introduce the story and get it going. Finally, your conclusion should help resolve the central conflict of the story and impress upon your reader the ultimate theme of the piece.

## Narratives Tell A Story

Every day, you relate stories to other people through simple exchanges. You may have had a horrible experience at a restaurant the night before, or you may have had some good news you are ready to share. In each one of these experiences there's a story, and when you begin to share a personal experience, you often communicate in a narrative mode.

Although narratives can vary widely, most share several common features. Generally, storytellers establish:

- *Characters*, the person/people (sometimes they are animals) the story is about, which may include the storyteller
- *Conflict*, or struggle in the story, that builds their audience's interest
- *Details*, or descriptions, that appeal to the senses of sight, sound, smell, touch, and taste
- A *sequence of events* in a *plot*, or order of what happens in the story, that keeps the audience engaged as the story unfolds
- Reflection of events around a *theme*, or unifying idea, for telling the story

## Narratives of Love and War

Consider two narratives that couldn't be more different—a tale of love and a story of war: John Hodgman's sweet, geeky tale of falling in love and Emmanuel Jal's story of being a child soldier and learning to forgive his enemies. Review these videos below then engage in a discussion following the directions as listed.

John Hodgman: *A Brief Digression on Matters of Lost Time*



*One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online*

here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=77#oembed-1>

Emmanuel Jal: *The Music of a War Child*



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=77#oembed-2>

---

## Narrative Essay Example

Read the following example of a narrative essay. Note how it reflects the basic components and common features of narratives, as discussed above.

### **My College Education**

By Scott McLean, in *Writing for Success*

The first class I went to in college was philosophy, and it changed my life forever. Our first assignment was to write a short response paper to the Albert Camus essay “The Myth of Sisyphus.” I was extremely nervous about the assignment as well as college. However, through all the confusion in philosophy class, many of my questions about life were answered.

I entered college intending to earn a degree in engineering. I always liked the way mathematics had right and wrong answers. I understood the logic and was very good at it. So when I received my first philosophy assignment that asked me to write my interpretation of the Camus essay, I was instantly confused. What is the right way to do this assignment, I wondered? I was nervous about writing an incorrect interpretation and did not want to get my first assignment wrong. Even more troubling was that the professor refused to give us any guidelines on what he was

looking for; he gave us total freedom. He simply said, “I want to see what you come up with.”

Full of anxiety, I first set out to read Camus’s essay several times to make sure I really knew what it was about. I did my best to take careful notes. Yet even after I took all these notes and knew the essay inside and out, I still did not know the right answer. What was my interpretation? I could think of a million different ways to interpret the essay, but which one was my professor looking for? In math class, I was used to examples and explanations of solutions. This assignment gave me nothing; I was completely on my own to come up with my individual interpretation.

Next, when I sat down to write, the words just did not come to me. My notes and ideas were all present, but the words were lost. I decided to try every prewriting strategy I could find. I brainstormed, made idea maps, and even wrote an outline. Eventually, after a lot of stress, my ideas became more organized and the words fell on the page. I had my interpretation of “The Myth of Sisyphus,” and I had my main reasons for interpreting the essay. I remember being unsure of myself, wondering if what I was saying made sense, or if I was even on the right track. Through all the uncertainty, I continued writing the best I could. I finished the conclusion paragraph, had my spouse proofread it for errors, and turned it in the next day simply hoping for the best.

Then, a week or two later, came judgment day. The professor gave our papers back to us with grades and comments. I remember feeling simultaneously afraid and eager to get the paper back in my hands. It turned out, however, that I had nothing to worry about. The professor gave me an A on the paper, and his notes suggested that I wrote an effective essay overall. He wrote that my reading of the essay was very original and that my thoughts were well organized. My relief and newfound confidence upon reading his comments could not be overstated.

What I learned through this process extended well beyond how to write a college paper. I learned to be open to new challenges. I never expected to enjoy a philosophy class and always expected to

be a math and science person. This class and assignment, however, gave me the selfconfidence, critical-thinking skills, and courage to try a new career path. I left engineering and went on to study law and eventually became a lawyer. More important, that class and paper helped me understand education differently. Instead of seeing college as a direct stepping stone to a career, I learned to see college as a place to first learn and then seek a career or enhance an existing career. By giving me the space to express my own interpretation and to argue for my own values, my philosophy class taught me the importance of education for education's sake. That realization continues to pay dividends every day.

## Key Takeaways

- Narration is the art of storytelling.
- Narratives can be either factual or fictional. In either case, narratives should emotionally engage the reader.
- Most narratives are composed of major events sequenced in chronological order.
- Time transition words and phrases are used to orient the reader in the sequence of a narrative.
- The four basic components to all narratives are plot, character, conflict, and theme.
- The use of sensory details is crucial to emotionally engaging the reader.
- A strong introduction is important to hook the reader. A strong conclusion should add resolution to the conflict and evoke the narrative's theme.

## 56. Student Sample: Narrative Essay

### *My College Education*

The first class I went to in college was philosophy, and it changed my life forever. Our first assignment was to write a short response paper to the Albert Camus essay “The Myth of Sisyphus.” I was extremely nervous about the assignment as well as college. However, through all the confusion in philosophy class, many of my questions about life were answered.

I entered college intending to earn a degree in engineering. I always liked the way mathematics had right and wrong answers. I understood the logic and was very good at it. So when I received my first philosophy assignment that asked me to write my interpretation of the Camus essay, I was instantly confused. What is the right way to do this assignment, I wondered? I was nervous about writing an incorrect interpretation and did not want to get my first assignment wrong. Even more troubling was that the professor refused to give us any guidelines on what he was looking for; he gave us total freedom. He simply said, “I want to see what you come up with.”

Full of anxiety, I first set out to read Camus’s essay several times to make sure I really knew what it was about. I did my best to take careful notes. Yet even after I took all these notes and knew the essay inside and out, I still did not know the right answer. What was my interpretation? I could think of a million different ways to interpret the essay, but which one was my professor looking for? In math class, I was used to examples and explanations of solutions. This assignment gave me nothing; I was completely on my own to come up with my individual interpretation.

Next, when I sat down to write, the words just did not come to

me. My notes and ideas were all present, but the words were lost. I decided to try every prewriting strategy I could find. I brainstormed, made idea maps, and even wrote an outline. Eventually, after a lot of stress, my ideas became more organized and the words fell on the page. I had my interpretation of “The Myth of Sisyphus,” and I had my main reasons for interpreting the essay. I remember being unsure of myself, wondering if what I was saying made sense, or if I was even on the right track. Through all the uncertainty, I continued writing the best I could. I finished the conclusion paragraph, had my spouse proofread it for errors, and turned it in the next day simply hoping for the best.

Then, a week or two later, came judgment day. The professor gave our papers back to us with grades and comments. I remember feeling simultaneously afraid and eager to get the paper back in my hands. It turned out, however, that I had nothing to worry about. The professor gave me an A on the paper, and his notes suggested that I wrote an effective essay overall. He wrote that my reading of the essay was very original and that my thoughts were well organized. My relief and newfound confidence upon reading his comments could not be overstated.

What I learned through this process extended well beyond how to write a college paper. I learned to be open to new challenges. I never expected to enjoy a philosophy class and always expected to be a math and science person. This class and assignment, however, gave me the self-confidence, critical-thinking skills, and courage to try a new career path. I left engineering and went on to study law and eventually became a lawyer. More important, that class and paper helped me understand education differently. Instead of seeing college as a direct stepping stone to a career, I learned to see college as a place to first learn and then seek a career or enhance an existing career. By giving me the space to express my own interpretation and to argue for my own values, my philosophy class taught me the importance of education for education’s sake. That realization continues to pay dividends every day.



PART VI  
ILLUSTRATION/EXAMPLE  
ESSAY



# 57. Introduction to Illustration/Example Essay

## Illustration/Example

To illustrate means to show or demonstrate something clearly. An effective illustration essay clearly demonstrates and supports a point through the use of examples and/or evidence. Ultimately, you want the evidence to help the reader “see” your point, as one would see a good illustration in a magazine or on a website. The stronger your evidence is, the more clearly the reader will consider your point.

In this module, you will develop your skills in illustration/example writing.

## Module Outcomes

After successfully completing this module, you should be able to:

1. Determine the purpose and structure of the illustration essay.
2. Understand how to write an illustration essay.

## 58. "She's Your Basic L.O.L. in N.A.D" by Perri Klass

In “She’s Your Basic L.O.L. in N.A.D,” pediatrician and writer Perri Klass discusses the medical-speak she encountered in her training as a doctor and its underlying meaning.

Click on the link to view the essay: “She’s Your Basic L.O.L. in N.A.D” by Perri Klass

As you read, look for the following:

- The author’s primary thesis or theme
- The examples provided by each author to assert the theme
- See if you can determine which essay uses “multiple” examples (a series of brief examples to illustrate or assert the thesis) and which essay uses “extended” examples (longer examples explained through multiple sentences or paragraphs)

## 59. "April & Paris" by David Sedaris

In "April & Paris," writer David Sedaris explores the unique impact of animals on the human psyche.

Click on the link to view the essay: "April & Paris" by David Sedaris

As you read, look for the following:

- The author's primary thesis or theme
- The examples provided by the author to assert the theme
- See if you can determine which essay uses "multiple" examples (a series of brief examples to illustrate or assert the thesis) and which essay uses "extended" examples (longer examples explained through multiple sentences or paragraphs)

# 60. Writing for Success: Illustration/Example

ANONYMOUS

## *LEARNING OBJECTIVES*

This section will help you determine the purpose and structure of illustration/ example in writing.

## The Purpose of Illustration in Writing

To illustrate means to show or demonstrate something clearly. An effective illustration essay, also known as an example essay, clearly demonstrates and supports a point through the use of evidence.

The controlling idea of an essay is called a thesis. A writer can use different types of evidence to support his or her thesis. Using scientific studies, experts in a particular field, statistics, historical events, current events, analogies, and personal anecdotes are all ways in which a writer can illustrate a thesis. Ultimately, you want the evidence to help the reader “see” your point, as one would see a good illustration in a magazine or on a website. The stronger your evidence is, the more clearly the reader will consider your point.

Using evidence effectively can be challenging, though. The

evidence you choose will usually depend on your subject and who your reader is (your audience). When writing an illustration essay, keep in mind the following:

- Use evidence that is appropriate to your topic as well as appropriate for your audience.
- Assess how much evidence you need to adequately explain your point depending on the complexity of the subject and the knowledge of your audience regarding that subject.

For example, if you were writing about a new communication software and your audience was a group of English-major undergrads, you might want to use an analogy or a personal story to illustrate how the software worked. You might also choose to add a few more pieces of evidence to make sure the audience understands your point. However, if you were writing about the same subject and your audience members were information technology (IT) specialists, you would likely use more technical evidence because they would be familiar with the subject.

Keeping in mind your subject in relation to your audience will increase your chances of effectively illustrating your point.

## The Structure of an Illustration Essay

The controlling idea, or thesis, belongs at the beginning of the essay. Evidence is then presented in the essay's body paragraphs to support the thesis. You can start supporting your main point with your strongest evidence first, or you can start with evidence of lesser importance and have the essay build to increasingly stronger evidence. This type of organization is called "order of importance."

Transition words are also helpful in ordering the presentation of evidence. Words like first, second, third, currently, next, and finally all help orient the reader and sequence evidence clearly.

Because an illustration essay uses so many examples, it is also helpful to have a list of words and phrases to present each piece of evidence. Certain transitional words and phrases aid in keeping the reader oriented in the sequencing of a story. Some of these phrases are listed here:

**Phrases of Illustration**

case in point	for example
for instance	in particular
in this case	one example/another example
specifically	to illustrate

Vary the phrases of illustration you use. Do not rely on just one. Variety in choice of words and phrasing is critical when trying to keep readers engaged in your writing and your ideas.

## Writing an Illustration Essay

First, decide on a topic that you feel interested in writing about. Then create an interesting introduction to engage the reader. The main point, or thesis, should be stated at the end of the introduction.

Gather evidence that is appropriate to both your subject and your audience. You can order the evidence in terms of importance, either from least important to most important or from most important to least important. Be sure to fully explain all of your examples using strong, clear supporting details.



## Illustration/Example Essay Example

### **Letter to the City**

By Scott McLean in *Writing for Success*

To: Lakeview Department of Transportation

From: A Concerned Citizen

The intersection of Central Avenue and Lake Street is dangerous and demands immediate consideration for the installation of a controlling mechanism. I have lived in Lakeview my entire life, and during that time I have witnessed too many accidents and close calls at that intersection. I would like the Department of Transportation to answer this question: how many lives have to be lost on the corner of Central Avenue and Lake Street before a street light or stop sign is placed there?

Over the past twenty years, the population of Lakeview has increased dramatically. This population growth has put tremendous pressure on the city's roadways, especially Central Avenue and its intersecting streets. At the intersection of Central Avenue and Lake Street it is easy to see how serious this problem is. For example, when I try to cross Central Avenue as a pedestrian, I frequently wait over ten minutes for the cars to clear, and even then I must rush to the median. I will then have to continue to wait until I can finally run to the other side of the street. On one hand, even as a

physically fit adult, I can run only with significant effort and care. Expecting a senior citizen or a child to cross this street, on the other hand, is extremely dangerous and irresponsible. Does the city have any plans to do anything about this?

Recent data show that the intersection of Central Avenue and Lake Street has been especially dangerous. According to the city's own statistics, three fatalities occurred at that intersection in the past year alone. Over the past five years, the intersection witnessed fourteen car accidents, five of which were fatal. These numbers officially qualify the intersection as the most fatal and dangerous in the entire state. It should go without saying that fatalities and accidents are not the clearest way of measuring the severity of this situation because for each accident that happens, countless other close calls never contribute to city data. I hope you will agree that these numbers alone are sufficient evidence that the intersection at Central Avenue and Lake Street is hazardous and demands immediate attention.

Nearly all accidents mentioned are caused by vehicles trying to cross Central Avenue while driving on Lake Street. I think the City of Lakeview should consider placing a traffic light there to control the traffic going both ways. While I do not have access to any resources or data that can show precisely how much a traffic light can improve the intersection, I think you will agree that a controlled busy intersection is much safer than an uncontrolled one. Therefore, at a minimum, the city must consider making the intersection a four-way stop.

Each day that goes by without attention to this issue

is a lost opportunity to save lives and make the community a safer, more enjoyable place to live. Because the safety of citizens is the priority of every government, I can only expect that the Department of Transportation and the City of Lakeview will act on this matter immediately. For the safety and well-being of Lakeview citizens, please do not let bureaucracy or money impede this urgent project.

Sincerely,

A Concerned Citizen

### *Key Takeaways*

- An illustration essay clearly explains a main point using evidence.
- When choosing evidence, always gauge whether the evidence is appropriate for the subject as well as the audience.
- Organize the evidence in terms of importance, either from least important to most important or from most important to least important.
- Use time transitions to order evidence.
- Use phrases of illustration to call out examples.

## 6I. Student Sample: Illustration/Example Essay

### Illustration/Example Essay Example

#### *Letter to the City*

To: Lakeview Department of Transportation

From: A Concerned Citizen

The intersection of Central Avenue and Lake Street is dangerous and demands immediate consideration for the installation of a controlling mechanism. I have lived in Lakeview my entire life, and during that time I have witnessed too many accidents and close calls at that intersection. I would like the Department of Transportation to answer this question: how many lives have to be lost on the corner of Central Avenue and Lake Street before a street light or stop sign is placed there?

Over the past twenty years, the population of Lakeview has increased dramatically. This population growth has put tremendous pressure on the city's roadways, especially Central Avenue and its intersecting streets. At the intersection of Central Avenue and Lake Street it is easy to see how serious this problem is. For example, when I try to cross Central Avenue as a pedestrian, I frequently wait over ten minutes for the cars to clear, and even then I must rush to the median. I will then have to continue to wait until I can finally run to the other side of the street. On one hand, even as a physically fit adult, I can run only with significant effort and care. Expecting a senior citizen or a child to cross this street, on the other hand, is extremely dangerous and irresponsible. Does the city have any plans to do anything about this?

Recent data show that the intersection of Central Avenue and Lake Street has been especially dangerous. According to the city's own statistics, three fatalities occurred at that intersection in the past year alone. Over the past five years, the intersection witnessed fourteen car accidents, five of which were fatal. These numbers officially qualify the intersection as the most fatal and dangerous in the entire state. It should go without saying that fatalities and accidents are not the clearest way of measuring the severity of this situation because for each accident that happens, countless other close calls never contribute to city data. I hope you will agree that these numbers alone are sufficient evidence that the intersection at Central Avenue and Lake Street is hazardous and demands immediate attention.

Nearly all accidents mentioned are caused by vehicles trying to cross Central Avenue while driving on Lake Street. I think the City of Lakeview should consider placing a traffic light there to control the traffic going both ways. While I do not have access to any resources or data that can show precisely how much a traffic light can improve the intersection, I think you will agree that a controlled busy intersection is much safer than an uncontrolled one. Therefore, at a minimum, the city must consider making the intersection a four-way stop.

Each day that goes by without attention to this issue is a lost opportunity to save lives and make the community a safer, more enjoyable place to live. Because the safety of citizens is the priority of every government, I can only expect that the Department of Transportation and the City of Lakeview will act on this matter immediately. For the safety and well-being of Lakeview citizens, please do not let bureaucracy or money impede this urgent project.

Sincerely,

A Concerned Citizen



PART VII

# COMPARE/CONTRAST ESSAY





# 62. Introduction to Compare/Contrast Essay

ANONYMOUS

**Comparison** in writing discusses elements that are similar, while **contrast** in writing discusses elements that are different.

The key to a good compare-and-contrast essay is to choose two or more subjects that connect in a meaningful way. The purpose of conducting the comparison or contrast is not simply to state the obvious but rather to illuminate subtle differences or unexpected similarities. Through this process, the essay reveals insights that are interesting to the reader.

In this module, you will develop your skills in compare and contrast writing.

## Module Outcomes

After successfully completing this module, you should be able to:

1. Determine the purpose and structure of the compare and contrast essay.
2. Understand how to write a compare and contrast essay.

## 63. "Disability" by Nancy Mairs

In "Disability," writer Nancy Mairs discusses the experience of being a disabled person in a world focused on the able-bodied.

Click on the link to view the essay: "Disability," by Nancy Mairs

As you read, look for the following:

- What "points for comparison" does the author use?
- How does the author go beyond the obvious similarities and differences to surface interesting ideas and insights?

## 64. "Friending, Ancient or Otherwise" by Alex Wright

In "Friending, Ancient or Otherwise," writer Alex Wright explores the evolution and purpose of friendship in the age of social media.

Click on the link to view the essay: "Friending, Ancient or Otherwise" by Alex Wright

As you read, look for the following:

- What "points for comparison" does the author use?
- How does the author go beyond the obvious similarities and differences to surface interesting ideas and insights?

# 65. "A South African Storm"

## by Allison Howard

As you read, look for the following:

- What “points for comparison” does the author use?
- How does the author go beyond the obvious similarities and differences to surface interesting ideas and insights?

*By Allison Howard – Peace Corps Volunteer: South Africa  
(2003–2005)*

It's a Saturday afternoon in January in South Africa. When I begin the 45-minute walk to the shops for groceries, I can hear thunder cracking in the distance up the mountain in Mageobaskloof. But at 4 p.m. the sky is still light and bright and I am sure—famous last words—I will be fine without an umbrella.

Just the basics: eggs, bread, Diet Coke in a bag slung into the crook of my elbow. Halfway from town, two black South African women—domestic workers in the homes of white Afrikaner families—stop me with wide smiles. They know me; I'm the only white person in town who walks everywhere, as they do. They chatter quickly in northern Sotho: “Missus, you must go fast. *Pula e tla na!* The rain, it comes!” They like me, and it feels very important to me that they do. “*Yebo, yebo, mma,*” I say—Yes, it's true—and I hurry along in flip-flops, quickening my pace, feeling good about our brief but neighborly conversation. These are Venda women.

My black South African friends tell me it's easy to tell a Venda from a Shangaan from a Xhosa from a Pedi. “These ones from Venda, they have wide across the nose and high in the cheekbones,” they say. But I don't see it; I'm years away from being able to distinguish the nuances of ethnicity. Today, I know these women are Vendas simply because of their clothing: bright stripes of green and yellow and black fabric tied at one shoulder and hanging quite like a sack

around their bodies. They've already extended a kindness to me by speaking in northern Sotho. It's not their language but they know I don't speak a word of Afrikaans (though they don't understand why; Afrikaans is the language of white people). They know I struggle with Sotho and they're trying to help me learn. So they speak Sotho to me and they're delighted and amused by my fumbling responses. And I am, quite simply, delighted by their delight.

The Venda ladies are right: the rain, it comes. Lightly at first, and by habit I begin trotting to hurry my way home. Just a little rain at first and there are plenty of us out in it. I can see others up ahead on the street and others still just leaving the shops to get back before the real rain begins.

The people who are walking along this swath of tar road are black. Black people don't live in this neighborhood—or in my town at all, for the most part. They work and board here as domestic workers, nannies, gardeners. Their families live in black townships and rural villages—some just outside of my town; others far away, in places like Venda.

Today, we're walking together in the rain, and I'm quickening my pace because—after all, *it's raining*. That's what you do in the rain. And even though it's coming down noticeably harder, it's 80 degrees and I'm not cold, I'm just wet. My hair is stuck to my forehead and my T-shirt is soaked ... and I'm the only one running for cover. And I think: So what? It's just water and in the middle of the January summer, it's warm, refreshing water. Why run? Why do we run from the rain?

In my life back in the United States, I might run because I was carrying a leather handbag, or because I wore an outfit that shouldn't get wet. I would run because rain dishevels and messes things up. Mostly though, we run because we just do; it's a habit. I've done it a hundred times: running to my car or the subway station with a newspaper sheltering my head. I have never not quickened my pace in the rain until today.

It took all of my 27 years and a move to Africa, where I don't have a leather handbag to shelter or a pretty outfit to protect. I'm wearing

an old cotton skirt and a T-shirt, and I'm drenched, and I love it. I learn things here in the most ordinary circumstances. And I feel like a smarter, better woman today because I got groceries in the rain.

But on the long walk home, positively soaked and smiling like a fool, I notice a car pulling over and a man yelling in Afrikaans to get in, get in. I look in the direction I've come from and several meters behind me is a woman with a baby tied to her back and an elderly man carrying bags, leading a young boy by the hand. On the road ahead, a woman about my age carries a parcel wrapped in plastic, balanced precariously on her head. There are maybe 20 people walking with me in my reverie of rain and they are black. And the man in the car is white and he's gesturing frantically for me to get in. Why me? Why not the others? Because I'm white and it's about race. Everything is about race here.

This man in the car is trying to do something kind and neighborly. He wants to help me and his gesture is right, but his instincts are so wrong. How do you resent someone who is, for no benefit of his own, trying to help? But I do. I resent him and I resent the world he lives in that taught him such selective kindness. This whole event unravels in a few seconds' time. He's leaned over and opened the car door, urging me in ... and I get in. And we speed past my fellow walkers and he drops me at my doorstep before I have time to think of anything besides giving him directions.

It feels like a mistake because I'm ashamed to think what the Venda women would have felt if he'd ignored them and they had watched me climb into that car. In some ways, the whole episode seems absurd. I'm not going to atone for 400 years of South African history by walking with black people in the rain. If I'd refused his ride, he wouldn't have thought anything besides the fact that I was certifiably crazy. That's the thing about being here: I'm not going to *change* anything. But I believe it matters in some infinitesimal way that people like the Venda women, and the dozens of people who may walk alongside me on any given day, know that I'm there. In black South African culture it is polite to greet every person you pass. That's what they do, so I do it, too. On the occasional

morning, someone might greet me as “sesi,” sister. I have to believe that matters; I know it matters to me.

I was disappointed in myself for getting into the car because I acted according to the same habit that makes us think rain an inconvenience. Just as we run from the rain, I hopped into that car because I’m *supposed* to. Conventionally, it makes sense. But convention compels us to do so many things that don’t make any sense at all. Convention *misinforms* our instincts. And in a larger sense, it is convention that propels Afrikaner culture anachronistically into the future. Ten years after the supposed end of apartheid, I’m living in a world of institutionalized racism. Convention becomes institution—and it’s oppressive and it’s unjust. I know that if I’m going to make it here for two more years, I need to walk in the rain. It’s a small, wasted gesture, but it’s an uncorrupted instinct that makes me feel human.

So much about living here feels like that fraction of a second when the Afrikaner man was appealing to my conventional sensibilities and the people on the street were appealing to my human instincts. It may feel unnatural to reject those sensibilities just as, at first, it feels unnatural to walk in the rain. But if I lose a hold on my instincts here, I’ll fail myself and I’ll fail to achieve those tiny things that matter so much. It’s simple and it’s small; and it’s everything. Gandhi said, “Be the change you wish to see in the world.” Indeed. Let it rain.

# 66. Writing for Success: Compare/Contrast

ANONYMOUS

## *LEARNING OBJECTIVES*

This section will help you determine the purpose and structure of comparison/contrast in writing.

## **The Purpose of Compare/Contrast in Writing**

Comparison in writing discusses elements that are similar, while contrast in writing discusses elements that are different. A compare-and-contrast essay, then, analyzes two subjects by comparing them, contrasting them, or both.

The key to a good compare-and-contrast essay is to choose two or more subjects that connect in a meaningful way. The purpose of conducting the comparison or contrast is not to state the obvious but rather to illuminate subtle differences or unexpected similarities. For example, if you wanted to focus on contrasting two subjects you would not pick apples and oranges; rather, you might choose to compare and contrast two types of oranges or two types of apples to highlight subtle differences. For example, Red Delicious



apples are sweet, while Granny Smiths are tart and acidic. Drawing distinctions between elements in a similar category will increase the audience's understanding of that category, which is the purpose of the compare-and-contrast essay.

Similarly, to focus on comparison, choose two subjects that seem at first to be unrelated. For a comparison essay, you likely would not choose two apples or two oranges because they share so many of the same properties already. Rather, you might try to compare how apples and oranges are quite similar. The more divergent the two subjects initially seem, the more interesting a comparison essay will be.

## The Structure of a Compare/Contrast Essay

The compare-and-contrast essay starts with a thesis that clearly states the two subjects that are to be compared, contrasted, or both and the reason for doing so. The thesis could lean more toward comparing, contrasting, or both. Remember, the point of comparing and contrasting is to provide useful knowledge to the reader. Take the following thesis as an example that leans more toward contrasting:

***Thesis Statement: Organic vegetables may cost more than those that are conventionally grown, but when put to the test, they are definitely worth every extra penny.***

Here the thesis sets up the two subjects to be compared and contrasted (organic versus conventional vegetables), and it makes a claim about the results that might prove useful to the reader.

You may organize compare-and-contrast essays in one of the following two ways:

1. According to the subjects themselves, discussing one then the other
2. According to individual points, discussing each subject in

relation to each point

The organizational structure you choose depends on the nature of the topic, your purpose, and your audience.

Given that compare-and-contrast essays analyze the relationship between two subjects, it is helpful to have some phrases on hand that will cue the reader to such analysis.

**Phrases of Comparison and Contrast**

Comparison	Contrast
one similarity	one difference
another similarity	another difference
both	conversely
like	in contrast
likewise	unlike
similarly	while
in a similar fashion	whereas

**Writing an Compare/Contrast Essay**

First choose whether you want to compare seemingly disparate subjects, contrast seemingly similar subjects, or compare and contrast subjects. Once you have decided on a topic, introduce it with an engaging opening paragraph. Your thesis should come at the end of the introduction, and it should establish the subjects you will

compare, contrast, or both as well as state what can be learned from doing so.

The body of the essay can be organized in one of two ways: by subject or by individual points. The organizing strategy that you choose will depend on, as always, your audience and your purpose. You may also consider your particular approach to the subjects as well as the nature of the subjects themselves; some subjects might better lend themselves to one structure or the other. Make sure to use comparison and contrast phrases to cue the reader to the ways in which you are analyzing the relationship between the subjects.

After you finish analyzing the subjects, write a conclusion that summarizes the main points of the essay and reinforces your thesis.

## Compare/Contrast Essay Example

### **Comparing and Contrasting London and Washington, DC**

By Scott McLean in *Writing for Success*

Both Washington, DC, and London are capital cities of English-speaking countries, and yet they offer vastly different experiences to their residents and visitors. Comparing and contrasting the two cities based on their history, their culture, and their residents show how different and similar the two are.

Both cities are rich in world and national history, though they developed on very different time lines. London, for example, has a history that dates back over

two thousand years. It was part of the Roman Empire and known by the similar name, Londinium. It was not only one of the northernmost points of the Roman Empire but also the epicenter of the British Empire where it held significant global influence from the early sixteenth century on through the early twentieth century. Washington, DC, on the other hand, has only formally existed since the late eighteenth century. Though Native Americans inhabited the land several thousand years earlier, and settlers inhabited the land as early as the sixteenth century, the city did not become the capital of the United States until the 1790s. From that point onward to today, however, Washington, DC, has increasingly maintained significant global influence. Even though both cities have different histories, they have both held, and continue to hold, significant social influence in the economic and cultural global spheres.

Both Washington, DC, and London offer a wide array of museums that harbor many of the world's most prized treasures. While Washington, DC, has the National Gallery of Art and several other Smithsonian galleries, London's art scene and galleries have a definite edge in this category. From the Tate Modern to the British National Gallery, London's art ranks among the world's best. This difference and advantage has much to do with London and Britain's historical depth compared to that of the United States. London has a much richer past than Washington, DC, and consequently has a lot more material to pull from when arranging its collections. Both cities have thriving theater districts, but again, London wins this comparison, too, both in

quantity and quality of theater choices. With regard to other cultural places like restaurants, pubs, and bars, both cities are very comparable. Both have a wide selection of expensive, elegant restaurants as well as a similar amount of global and national chains. While London may be better known for its pubs and taste in beer, DC offers a different bar-going experience. With clubs and pubs that tend to stay open later than their British counterparts, the DC night life tends to be less reserved overall.

Both cities also share and differ in cultural diversity and cost of living. Both cities share a very expensive cost of living—both in terms of housing and shopping. A downtown one-bedroom apartment in DC can easily cost \$1,800 per month, and a similar “flat” in London may double that amount. These high costs create socioeconomic disparity among the residents. Although both cities’ residents are predominantly wealthy, both have a significantly large population of poor and homeless. Perhaps the most significant difference between the resident demographics is the racial makeup. Washington, DC, is a “minority majority” city, which means the majority of its citizens are races other than white. In 2009, according to the US Census, 55 percent of DC residents were classified as “Black or African American” and 35 percent of its residents were classified as “white.” London, by contrast, has very few minorities—in 2006, 70 percent of its population was “white,” while only 10 percent was “black.” The racial demographic differences between the cities is drastic.

Even though Washington, DC, and London are major

capital cities of English-speaking countries in the Western world, they have many differences along with their similarities. They have vastly different histories, art cultures, and racial demographics, but they remain similar in their cost of living and socioeconomic disparity.

## KEY TAKEAWAYS

- A compare-and-contrast essay analyzes two subjects by either comparing them, contrasting them, or both.
- The purpose of writing a comparison or contrast essay is not to state the obvious but rather to illuminate subtle differences or unexpected similarities between two subjects.
- The thesis should clearly state the subjects that are to be compared, contrasted, or both, and it should state what is to be learned from doing so.
- There are two main organizing strategies for compare-and-contrast essays.
  1. Organize by the subjects themselves, one then the other.
  2. Organize by individual points, in which you discuss each subject in relation to each point.
- Use phrases of comparison or phrases of contrast to signal to readers how exactly the two subjects are being analyzed.

## 67. Student Sample: Compare/Contrast Essay

### Compare and Contrast Essay

#### *Comparing and Contrasting London and Washington, DC*

Both Washington, DC, and London are capital cities of English-speaking countries, and yet they offer vastly different experiences to their residents and visitors. Comparing and contrasting the two cities based on their history, their culture, and their residents show how different and similar the two are.

Both cities are rich in world and national history, though they developed on very different time lines. London, for example, has a history that dates back over two thousand years. It was part of the Roman Empire and known by the similar name, Londinium. It was not only one of the northernmost points of the Roman Empire but also the epicenter of the British Empire where it held significant global influence from the early sixteenth century on through the early twentieth century. Washington, DC, on the other hand, has only formally existed since the late eighteenth century. Though Native Americans inhabited the land several thousand years earlier, and settlers inhabited the land as early as the sixteenth century, the city did not become the capital of the United States until the 1790s. From that point onward to today, however, Washington, DC, has increasingly maintained significant global influence. Even though both cities have different histories, they have both held, and continue to hold, significant social influence in the economic and cultural global spheres.

Both Washington, DC, and London offer a wide array of museums



that harbor many of the world's most prized treasures. While Washington, DC, has the National Gallery of Art and several other Smithsonian galleries, London's art scene and galleries have a definite edge in this category. From the Tate Modern to the British National Gallery, London's art ranks among the world's best. This difference and advantage has much to do with London and Britain's historical depth compared to that of the United States. London has a much richer past than Washington, DC, and consequently has a lot more material to pull from when arranging its collections. Both cities have thriving theater districts, but again, London wins this comparison, too, both in quantity and quality of theater choices. With regard to other cultural places like restaurants, pubs, and bars, both cities are very comparable. Both have a wide selection of expensive, elegant restaurants as well as a similar amount of global and national chains. While London may be better known for its pubs and taste in beer, DC offers a different bar-going experience. With clubs and pubs that tend to stay open later than their British counterparts, the DC night life tend to be less reserved overall.

Both cities also share and differ in cultural diversity and cost of living. Both cities share a very expensive cost of living—both in terms of housing and shopping. A downtown one-bedroom apartment in DC can easily cost \$1,800 per month, and a similar “flat” in London may double that amount. These high costs create socioeconomic disparity among the residents. Although both cities' residents are predominantly wealthy, both have a significantly large population of poor and homeless. Perhaps the most significant difference between the resident demographics is the racial makeup. Washington, DC, is a “minority majority” city, which means the majority of its citizens are races other than white. In 2009, according to the US Census, 55 percent of DC residents were classified as “Black or African American” and 35 percent of its residents were classified as “white.” London, by contrast, has very few minorities—in 2006, 70 percent of its population was “white,” while only 10 percent was “black.” The racial demographic differences between the cities is drastic.

Even though Washington, DC, and London are major capital cities of English-speaking countries in the Western world, they have many differences along with their similarities. They have vastly different histories, art cultures, and racial demographics, but they remain similar in their cost of living and socioeconomic disparity.

PART VIII

CAUSE AND EFFECT ESSAY



# 68. Introduction to Cause and Effect Essay

ANONYMOUS

## Cause and Effect

It is often considered human nature to ask, “why?” and “how?” We want to know how our child got sick so we can better prevent it from happening in the future. We want to know why a colleague received a pay raise because we want one as well. We want to know how much money we will save over the long term if we buy a hybrid car. These examples identify only a few of the relationships we think about in our lives, but each shows the importance of understanding cause and effect.

In this module, you will develop your skills in cause and effect writing.

## Module Outcomes

After successfully completing this module, you should be able to:

1. Determine the purpose and structure of the cause and effect essay.
2. Understand how to write a cause and effect essay.



## 69. "Cultural Baggage" by Barbara Ehrenreich

Click on the link to view the essay: "Cultural Baggage" by Barbara Ehrenreich

As you read, first identify the author's primary thesis or theme. Then identify the "causes" and/or "effects" that help reinforce the author's thesis.

## 70. "Women in Science" by K.C. Cole

Click on the link to view the essay: ["Women in Science" by K.C. Cole](#)

As you read, first identify the author's primary thesis or theme. Then identify the "causes" and/or "effects" that help reinforce the author's thesis.



# 71. Writing for Success: Cause and Effect

*Anonymous*

This section will help you determine the purpose and structure of cause and effect in writing.

## The Purpose of Cause and Effect in Writing

It is often considered human nature to ask, “why?” and “how?” We want to know how our child got sick so we can better prevent it from happening in the future, or why a colleague received a pay raise because we want one as well. We want to know how much money we will save over the long term if we buy a hybrid car, or how long we will live if we exercise daily. These examples identify only a few of the relationships we think about in our lives, but each shows the importance of understanding cause and effect.

A cause is something that produces an event or condition; an effect is what results from an event or condition. The purpose of the cause-and-effect essay is to determine how various phenomena relate in terms of origins and results. Sometimes the connection between cause and effect is clear, but often determining the exact relationship between the two is very difficult. For example, the following effects of a cold may be easily identifiable: a sore throat, runny nose, and a cough. But determining the cause of the sickness can be far more difficult. A number of causes are possible, and to complicate matters, these possible causes could have combined to cause the sickness. That is, more than one cause may be responsible

for any given effect. Therefore, cause-and-effect discussions are often complicated and frequently lead to debates and arguments.

Use the complex nature of cause and effect to your advantage. Often it is not necessary, or even possible, to find the exact cause of an event or to name the exact effect. So, when formulating a thesis, you can claim one of a number of causes or effects to be the primary, or main, cause or effect. As soon as you claim that one cause or one effect is more crucial than the others, you have developed a thesis.

## The Structure of a Cause and Effect Essay

The cause-and-effect essay opens with a general introduction to the topic, which then leads to a thesis that states the main cause, main effect, or various causes and effects of a condition or event.

The cause-and-effect essay can be organized in one of the following two primary ways:

- Start with the cause and then talk about the effects.
- Start with the effect and then talk about the causes.

For example, if your essay were on childhood obesity, you could start by talking about the effect of childhood obesity and then discuss the cause or you could start the same essay by talking about the cause of childhood obesity and then move to the effect.

Regardless of which structure you choose, be sure to explain each element of the essay fully and completely. Explaining complex relationships requires the full use of evidence, such as scientific studies, expert testimony, statistics, and anecdotes.

Because cause-and-effect essays determine how phenomena are linked, they make frequent use of certain words and phrases that denote such linkage. Certain transitional words and phrases aid in

keeping the reader oriented in the sequencing of a story. Some of these phrases are listed here:

### **Phrases of Causation**

as a result	consequently
because	due to
hence	since
thus	therefore

The conclusion should wrap up the discussion and reinforce the thesis, leaving the reader with a clear understanding of the relationship that was analyzed.

Be careful of resorting to empty speculation. In writing, speculation amounts to unsubstantiated guessing. Writers are particularly prone to such trappings in cause-and-effect arguments due to the complex nature of finding links between phenomena. Be sure to have clear evidence to support the claims that you make.

## **Writing an Cause and Effect Essay**

Choose an event or condition that you think has an interesting cause-and-effect relationship. Introduce your topic in an engaging way. End your introduction with a thesis that states the main cause, the main effect, or both.

Organize your essay by starting with either the cause-then-effect structure or the effect-then-cause structure. Within each section, you should clearly explain and support the causes and effects using a full range of evidence. If you are writing about multiple causes or multiple effects, you may choose to sequence either in terms of

order of importance. In other words, order the causes from least to most important (or vice versa), or order the effects from least important to most important (or vice versa).

Use the phrases of causation when trying to forge connections between various events or conditions. This will help organize your ideas and orient the reader. End your essay with a conclusion that summarizes your main points and reinforces your thesis.

## Cause and Effect Essay Example

### **Effects of Video Game Addiction**

By Scott McLean

Video game addiction is a serious problem in many parts of the world today and deserves more attention. It is no secret that children and adults in many countries throughout the world, including Japan, China, and the United States, play video games every day. Most players are able to limit their usage in ways that do not interfere with their daily lives, but many others have developed an addiction to playing video games and suffer detrimental effects.

An addiction can be described in several ways, but generally speaking, addictions involve unhealthy attractions to substances or activities that ultimately disrupt the ability of a person to keep up with regular daily responsibilities. Video game addiction typically involves playing games uncontrollably for many hours at a time—some people will play only four hours at a time while others cannot stop for over twenty-four hours. Regardless of the severity of the addiction, many of the same effects will be experienced by all.

One common effect of video game addiction is isolation and withdrawal from social experiences. Video game players often hide in their homes or in Internet cafés for days at a time—only reemerging for the most pressing tasks and necessities. The effect of this isolation can lead to a breakdown of communication skills and often a loss in socialization. While it is true that many games,

especially massive multiplayer online games, involve a very real form of e-based communication and coordination with others, and these virtual interactions often result in real communities that can be healthy for the players, these communities and forms of communication rarely translate to the types of valuable social interaction that humans need to maintain typical social functioning. As a result, the social networking in these online games often gives the users the impression that they are interacting socially, while their true social lives and personal relations may suffer.

Another unfortunate product of the isolation that often accompanies video game addiction is the disruption of the user's career. While many players manage to enjoy video games and still hold their jobs without problems, others experience challenges at their workplace. Some may only experience warnings or demerits as a result of poorer performance, or others may end up losing their jobs altogether. Playing video games for extended periods of time often involves sleep deprivation, and this tends to carry over to the workplace, reducing production and causing habitual tardiness.

Video game addiction may result in a decline in overall health and hygiene. Players who interact with video games for such significant amounts of time can go an entire day without eating and even longer without basic hygiene tasks, such as using the restroom or bathing. The effects of this behavior pose significant danger to their overall health.

The causes of video game addiction are complex and can vary greatly, but the effects have the potential to be severe. Playing video games can and should be a fun activity for all to enjoy. But just like everything else, the amount of time one spends playing video games needs to be balanced with personal and social responsibilities.

## Key Takeaways

- The purpose of the cause-and-effect essay is to determine

how various phenomena are related.

- The thesis states what the writer sees as the main cause, main effect, or various causes and effects of a condition or event.
- The cause-and-effect essay can be organized in one of these two primary ways:
- Start with the cause and then talk about the effect.
- Start with the effect and then talk about the cause.
- Strong evidence is particularly important in the cause-and-effect essay due to the complexity of determining connections between phenomena.
- Phrases of causation are helpful in signaling links between various elements in the essay.

## 72. Student Sample: Cause and Effect Essay

### Cause and Effect Essay Example

#### Effects of Video Game Addiction

Video game addiction is a serious problem in many parts of the world today and deserves more attention. It is no secret that children and adults in many countries throughout the world, including Japan, China, and the United States, play video games every day. Most players are able to limit their usage in ways that do not interfere with their daily lives, but many others have developed an addiction to playing video games and suffer detrimental effects.

An addiction can be described in several ways, but generally speaking, addictions involve unhealthy attractions to substances or activities that ultimately disrupt the ability of a person to keep up with regular daily responsibilities. Video game addiction typically involves playing games uncontrollably for many hours at a time—some people will play only four hours at a time while others cannot stop for over twenty-four hours. Regardless of the severity of the addiction, many of the same effects will be experienced by all.

One common effect of video game addiction is isolation and withdrawal from social experiences. Video game players often hide in their homes or in Internet cafés for days at a time—only reemerging for the most pressing tasks and necessities. The effect of this isolation can lead to a breakdown of communication skills and often a loss in socialization. While it is true that many games, especially massive multiplayer online games, involve a very real form of e-based communication and coordination with others, and these virtual interactions often result in real communities that can be healthy for the players, these communities and forms of

communication rarely translate to the types of valuable social interaction that humans need to maintain typical social functioning. As a result, the social networking in these online games often gives the users the impression that they are interacting socially, while their true social lives and personal relations may suffer.

Another unfortunate product of the isolation that often accompanies video game addiction is the disruption of the user's career. While many players manage to enjoy video games and still hold their jobs without problems, others experience challenges at their workplace. Some may only experience warnings or demerits as a result of poorer performance, or others may end up losing their jobs altogether. Playing video games for extended periods of time often involves sleep deprivation, and this tends to carry over to the workplace, reducing production and causing habitual tardiness.

Video game addiction may result in a decline in overall health and hygiene. Players who interact with video games for such significant amounts of time can go an entire day without eating and even longer without basic hygiene tasks, such as using the restroom or bathing. The effects of this behavior pose significant danger to their overall health.

The causes of video game addiction are complex and can vary greatly, but the effects have the potential to be severe. Playing video games can and should be a fun activity for all to enjoy. But just like everything else, the amount of time one spends playing video games needs to be balanced with personal and social responsibilities.



PART IX

# ARGUMENT ESSAY



# 73. Introduction to Argument Essay

ANONYMOUS

The idea of an argument often conjures up images of two people yelling and screaming in anger. In writing, however, an argument is very different. An argument is a reasoned opinion supported and explained by evidence. To argue effectively in writing is to advance knowledge and ideas in a positive, persuasive way. Written arguments often fail when they employ ranting rather than reasoning.

In this module, you will develop your skills in argumentative and persuasive writing.

## Module Outcomes

After successfully completing this module, you should be able to:

1. Determine the purpose and structure of an argumentative essay.
2. Understand how to write an argumentative essay.

## 74. Rogerian Argument

The Rogerian argument, inspired by the influential psychologist Carl Rogers, aims to find compromise on a controversial issue.

If you are using the Rogerian approach your introduction to the argument should accomplish three objectives:

**1. Introduce the author and work**

Usually, you will introduce the author and work in the first sentence:

***Here is an example:***

In Dwight Okita's "In Response to Executive Order 9066," the narrator addresses an inevitable by-product of war – racism.

The first time you refer to the author, refer to him or her by his or her full name. After that, refer to the author by last name only. Never refer to an author by his or her first name only.

**2. Provide the audience a short but concise summary of the work to which you are responding**

Remember, your audience has already read the work you are responding to. Therefore, you do not need to provide a lengthy summary. Focus on the main points of the work to which you are responding and use direct quotations sparingly. Direct quotations work best when they are powerful and compelling.

**3. State the main issue addressed in the work**

Your thesis, or claim, will come after you summarize the two sides of the issue.

### The Introduction

The following is an example of how the introduction of a Rogerian argument can be written. The topic is racial profiling.

In Dwight Okita's "In Response to Executive Order 9066," the narrator — a young Japanese-American — writes a letter to the government, who has ordered her family into a relocation camp after Pearl Harbor. In the letter, the narrator details the people in her life, from her father to her best friend at school. Since the narrator is of Japanese descent, her best friend accuses her of "trying to start a war" (18). The narrator is seemingly too naïve to realize the ignorance of this statement, and tells the government that she asked this friend to plant tomato seeds in her honor. Though Okita's poem deals specifically with World War II, the issue of race relations during wartime is still relevant. Recently, with the outbreaks of terrorism in the United States, Spain, and England, many are calling for racial profiling to stifle terrorism. The issue has sparked debate, with one side calling it racism and the other calling it common sense.

Once you have written your introduction, you must now show the two sides to the debate you are addressing. Though there are always more than two sides to a debate, Rogerian arguments put two in stark opposition to one another. Summarize each side, then provide a middle path. Your summary of the two sides will be your first two body paragraphs. Use quotations from outside sources to effectively illustrate the position of each side.

An outline for a Rogerian argument might look like this:

- Introduction
- Side A
- Side B
- Claim
- Conclusion

## The Claim

Since the goal of Rogerian argument is to find a common ground between two opposing positions, you must identify the shared beliefs or assumptions of each side. In the example above, both sides of the racial profiling issue want the U.S. A solid Rogerian argument acknowledges the desires of each side, and tries to accommodate both. Again, using the racial profiling example above, both sides desire a safer society, perhaps a better solution would focus on more objective measures than race; an effective start would be to use more screening technology on public transportation. Once you have a claim that disarms the central dispute, you should support the claim with evidence, and quotations when appropriate.

## Quoting Effectively

Remember, you should quote to illustrate a point you are making. You should not, however, quote to simply take up space. Make sure all quotations are compelling and intriguing. Consider the following example. In “The Danger of Political Correctness,” author Richard Stein asserts that, “the desire to not offend has now become more important than protecting national security” (52). This statement sums up the beliefs of those in favor of profiling in public places.

## The Conclusion

Your conclusion should:

- Bring the essay back to what is discussed in the introduction
- Tie up loose ends
- End on a thought-provoking note

***The following is a sample conclusion:***

Though the debate over racial profiling is sure to continue, each side desires to make the United States a safer place. With that goal in mind, our society deserves better security measures than merely searching a person who appears a bit dark. We cannot waste time with such subjective matters, especially when we have technology that could more effectively locate potential terrorists. Sure, installing metal detectors and cameras on public transportation is costly, but feeling safe in public is priceless.

## Sources

Permission granted from Michael Franco at Writing Essay 4:  
Rogerian Argument

## 75. "The Case Against Torture," by Alisa Soloman

In "*The Case Against Torture*," author and professor Alisa Soloman enumerates the reasons torture should never be practiced or justified in a civil society.

Click on the link to view the essay: "*The Case Against Torture*" by Alisa Soloman

As you read, look for the following:

- What is the author's thesis?
- What key points does the author use to argue the thesis?
- How does the author use reasoning, research and/or examples to affirm her viewpoint?
- How does the author attempt to refute opposing arguments?



## 76. "The Case for Torture" by Michael Levin

In "*The Case for Torture*," philosophy professor Michael Levin argues the circumstances under which torture may be justified in a civil society.

Click on the link to view the essay: "*The Case for Torture*" by Michael Levin

As you read, look for the following:

- What is the author's thesis?
- What key points does the author use to argue the thesis?
- How does the author use reasoning, research and/or examples to affirm his viewpoint?
- How does the author attempt to refute opposing arguments?

# 77. How to Write a Summary by Paraphrasing Source Material

When you paraphrase material from a source, you restate the information from an entire sentence or passage in your own words, using your own original sentence structure. A paraphrased source differs from a summarized source in that you focus on restating the ideas, not condensing them.

It is important to check your paraphrase against the source material to make sure it is both accurate and original. Inexperienced writers sometimes use the thesaurus method of paraphrasing—that is, they simply rewrite the source material, replacing most of the words with synonyms. This constitutes a misuse of sources. A true paraphrase restates ideas using the writer's own language and style.

Review the videos below about developing paraphrasing skills with writing:

Instruction on how to paraphrase:



*One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online*

here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=103#oembed-1>

How to avoid plagiarism when paraphrasing a text:



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=103#oembed-2>

## Paraphrase Writing Format

- **REMEMBER: IN THIS ASSIGNMENT, YOU SHOULD PARAPHRASE THE “WORD FOR WORD” PASSAGES THAT YOU CHOOSE. Follow the instructions below:**
- Write a Summary the way you always have, i.e., selecting “word-for-word” passages from the essay included in this module. Cite the page numbers in parentheses as you have up to now.
- Make a copy of your summary and place it below the original. Go into the copy of your summary and try to *paraphrase each “word-for-word” passage that you cited.*
- When writing a summary, remember that it should be in the form of a paragraph.
- A summary begins with an introductory sentence that states the text’s title, author and main point of the text as you see it.
- A summary is written in your own words.
- A summary contains only the ideas of the original text. Do not insert any of your own opinions, interpretations, deductions or comments into a summary.
- Identify in order the significant sub-claims the author uses to defend the main point.
- Using source material from the essay is important. Why?

Because defending claims with source material is what you will be asked to do when writing papers for your college professors.

- Write a last sentence that “wraps” up your summary; often a simple rephrasing of the main point.

## Example Paraphrase Writing Format

In the essay *Santa Ana*, author Joan Didion’s main point is (*state main point*). According to Didion ...PARAPHRASE 1...”. Didion also CLAIMS... PARAPHRASE 2...”. Finally, she CLAIMS “...PARAPHRASE 3...” Write a last sentence that “wraps” up your summary; often a simple rephrasing of the main point.

# 78. Writing for Success: Argument

ANONYMOUS

This section will help you determine the purpose and structure of an argumentative essay.

## The Purpose of Argument in Writing

The idea of an argument often conjures up images of two people yelling and screaming in anger. In writing, however, an argument is very different. An argument is a reasoned opinion supported and explained by evidence. To argue in writing is to advance knowledge and ideas in a positive way. Written arguments often fail when they employ ranting rather than reasoning.

**A Tip:** Most of us feel inclined to try to win the arguments we engage in. On some level, we all want to be right, and we want others to see the error of their ways. More times than not, however, arguments in which both sides try to win end up producing losers all around. The more productive approach is to **persuade** your audience to consider your opinion as a valid one, not simply the right one.

# The Structure of an Argumentative Essay

The following five features make up the structure of an argumentative essay:

1. Introduction and thesis
2. Opposing and qualifying ideas
3. Strong evidence in support of claim
4. Style and tone of language
5. A compelling conclusion

## *Creating an Introduction and Thesis*

The argumentative essay begins with an engaging introduction that presents the general topic. The thesis typically appears somewhere in the introduction and states the writer's point of view.

**A Tip:** Avoid forming a thesis based on a negative claim. For example, “The hourly minimum wage **is not** high enough for the average worker to live on.” This is probably a true statement, but arguments should make a positive case that affirms something. Instead of arguing something “**is not...**,” an argument essay is stronger when it asserts something “**is...**” Returning to the example above, a stronger thesis could focus on how the hourly wage **is** low or insufficient.

## *Acknowledging Opposing Ideas and Limits to Your Argument*

Because an argument implies differing points of view on the subject, you must be sure to acknowledge those opposing ideas. Avoiding ideas that conflict with your own gives the reader the impression that you may be uncertain, fearful, or unaware of opposing ideas. Thus it is essential that you not only address counterarguments but also do so respectfully.

Try to address opposing arguments earlier rather than later in your essay. Rhetorically speaking, ordering your positive arguments last allows you to better address ideas that conflict with your own, so you can spend the rest of the essay countering those arguments. This way, you leave your reader thinking about your argument rather than someone else's. You have the last word.

Acknowledging points of view different from your own also has the effect of fostering more credibility between you and the audience. They know from the outset that you are aware of opposing ideas and that you are not afraid to give them space.

It is also helpful to establish the limits of your argument and what you are trying to accomplish. In effect, you are conceding early on that your argument is not the ultimate authority on a given topic. Such humility can go a long way toward earning credibility and trust with an audience. Audience members will know from the beginning that you are a reasonable writer, and audience members will trust your argument as a result. For example, in the following concessionary statement, the writer advocates for stricter gun control laws, but she admits it will not solve all of our problems with crime:

Although tougher gun control laws are a powerful first step in decreasing violence in our streets, such legislation alone cannot end these problems since guns

are not the only problem we face.

Such a concession will be welcome by those who might disagree with this writer's argument in the first place. To effectively persuade their readers, writers need to be modest in their goals and humble in their approach to get readers to listen to the ideas. Certain transitional words and phrases aid in keeping the reader oriented in the sequencing of a story. Some of these phrases are listed here:

#### **Phrases of Concession**

although

granted that

of course

still

though

yet

### *Bias in Writing*

Everyone has various biases on any number of topics. For example, you might have a bias toward wearing black instead of brightly colored clothes or wearing jeans rather than formal wear. You might have a bias toward working at night rather than in the morning, or working by deadlines rather than getting tasks done in advance. These examples identify minor biases, of course, but they still indicate preferences and opinions.

Handling bias in writing and in daily life can be a useful skill. It will allow you to articulate your own points of view while also defending



yourself against unreasonable points of view. The ideal in persuasive writing is to let your reader know your bias, but do not let that bias blind you to the primary components of good argumentation: sound, thoughtful evidence and a respectful and reasonable address of opposing sides.

The strength of a personal bias is that it can motivate you to construct a strong argument. If you are invested in the topic, you are more likely to care about the piece of writing. Similarly, the more you care, the more time and effort you are apt to put forth and the better the final product will be.

The weakness of bias is when the bias begins to take over the essay—when, for example, you neglect opposing ideas, exaggerate your points, or repeatedly insert yourself ahead of the subject by using I too often. Being aware of all three of these pitfalls will help you avoid them.

### *The Use of I in Writing*

The use of I in writing is often a topic of debate, and the acceptance of its usage varies from instructor to instructor. It is difficult to predict the preferences for all your present and future instructors, but consider the effects it can potentially have on your writing.

Be mindful of the use of I in your writing because it can make your argument sound overly biased. There are two primary reasons:

- Excessive repetition of any word will eventually catch the reader's attention—and usually not in a good way. The use of I is no different.
- The insertion of I into a sentence alters not only the way a sentence might sound but also the composition of the sentence itself. I is often the subject of a sentence. If the subject of the essay is supposed to be, say, smoking, then by inserting yourself into the sentence, you are effectively displacing the subject of the essay into a secondary position. In

the following example, the subject of the sentence is underlined:

Smoking is bad.

I think smoking is bad.

In the first sentence, the rightful subject, *smoking*, is in the subject position in the sentence. In the second sentence, the insertion of *I* and *think* replaces smoking as the subject, which draws attention to *I* and away from the topic that is supposed to be discussed. Remember to keep the message (the subject) and the messenger (the writer) separate.

### *Developing Sound Arguments*

Use the following checklist to develop sound arguments in your essay:

- An engaging introduction
- A reasonable, specific thesis that is able to be supported by evidence
- A varied range of evidence from credible sources
- Respectful acknowledgement and explanation of opposing ideas
- A style and tone of language that is appropriate for the subject and audience
- Acknowledgement of the argument's limits
- A conclusion that will adequately summarize the essay and reinforce the thesis

### *Fact and Opinion*

**Facts** are statements that can be definitely proven using objective data. The statement that is a fact is absolutely valid. In other words,

the statement can be pronounced as true or false. For example,  $2 + 2 = 4$ . This expression identifies a true statement, or a fact, because it can be proved with objective data.

**Opinions** are personal views, or judgments. An opinion is what an individual believes about a particular subject. However, an opinion in argumentation must have legitimate backing; adequate evidence and credibility should support the opinion. Consider the credibility of expert opinions. Experts in a given field have the knowledge and credentials to make their opinion meaningful to a larger audience.

For example, you seek the opinion of your dentist when it comes to the health of your gums, and you seek the opinion of your mechanic when it comes to the maintenance of your car. Both have knowledge and credentials in those respective fields, which is why their opinions matter to you. But the authority of your dentist may be greatly diminished should he or she offer an opinion about your car, and vice versa.

In writing, you want to strike a balance between credible facts and authoritative opinions. Relying on one or the other will likely lose more of your audience than it gains.

The word prove is frequently used in the discussion of argumentative writing. Writers may claim that one piece of evidence or another proves the argument, but proving an argument is often not possible. No evidence proves a debatable topic one way or the other; that is why the topic is debatable. Facts can be proved, but opinions can only be supported, explained, and persuaded.

### *Using Visual Elements to Strengthen Arguments*

Adding visual elements to a persuasive argument can often strengthen its persuasive effect. There are two main types of visual elements: quantitative visuals and qualitative visuals.

**Quantitative visuals** present data graphically and visually. They allow the audience to see statistics spatially. The purpose of using quantitative visuals is to make logical appeals to the audience. For

example, sometimes it is easier to understand the disparity in certain statistics if you can see how the disparity looks graphically. Bar graphs, pie charts, Venn diagrams, histograms, line graphs and infographics are all ways of presenting quantitative data in visual and/or spatial dimensions.

**Qualitative visuals** present images that appeal to the audience's emotions. Photographs and pictorial images are examples of qualitative visuals. Such images often try to convey a story, and seeing an actual example can carry more power than hearing or reading about the example. For example, one image of a child suffering from malnutrition will likely have more of an emotional impact than pages dedicated to describing that same condition in writing.

## Writing an Argumentative Essay

Choose a topic that you feel passionate about. If your instructor requires you to write about a specific topic, approach the subject from an angle that interests you. Begin your essay with an engaging introduction. Your thesis should typically appear somewhere in your introduction.

Start by acknowledging and explaining points of view that may conflict with your own to build credibility and trust with your audience. Also state the limits of your argument. This too helps you sound more reasonable and honest to those who may naturally be inclined to disagree with your view. By respectfully acknowledging opposing arguments and conceding limitations to your own view, you set a measured and responsible tone for the essay.

Make your appeals in support of your thesis by using sound, credible evidence. Use a balance of facts and opinions from a wide range of sources, such as scientific studies, expert testimony, statistics, and personal anecdotes. Each piece of evidence should be fully explained and clearly stated.

Make sure that your style and tone are appropriate for your subject and audience. Tailor your language and word choice to these two factors, while still being true to your own voice.

Finally, write a conclusion that effectively summarizes the main argument and reinforces your thesis.

## Argumentative Essay Example

### **Universal Health Care Coverage for the United States**

By Scott McLean

The United States is the only modernized Western nation that does not offer publicly funded health care to all its citizens; the costs of health care for the uninsured in the United States are prohibitive, and the practices of insurance companies are often more interested in profit margins than providing health care. These conditions are incompatible with US ideals and standards, and it is time for the US government to provide universal health care coverage for all its citizens. Like education, health care should be considered a fundamental right of all US citizens, not simply a privilege for the upper and middle classes.

One of the most common arguments against providing universal health care coverage (UHC) is that it will cost too much money. In other words, UHC would raise taxes too much. While providing health care for all US citizens would cost a lot of money for every tax-paying citizen, citizens need to examine exactly how much money it would cost, and more important, how much money is “too much” when it comes to opening up health care for all. Those who have health insurance already pay too much money, and those without coverage are charged unfathomable amounts. The cost of publicly funded health care versus the cost of current insurance premiums is unclear. In fact, some Americans, especially those in lower income brackets, could stand to pay less than their current premiums.

However, even if UHC would cost Americans a bit more money each year, we ought to reflect on what type of country we would like to live in, and what types of morals we represent if we are more willing to deny health care to others on the basis of saving a couple hundred dollars per year. In a system that privileges capitalism and rugged individualism, little room remains for compassion and love. It is time that Americans realize the amorality of US hospitals forced to turn away the sick and poor. UHC is a health care system that aligns more closely with the core values that so many Americans espouse and respect, and it is time to realize its potential.

Another common argument against UHC in the United States is that other comparable national health care systems, like that of England, France, or Canada, are bankrupt or rife with problems. UHC opponents claim that sick patients in these countries often wait in long lines or long wait lists for basic health care. Opponents also commonly accuse these systems of being unable to pay for themselves, racking up huge deficits year after year. A fair amount of truth lies in these claims, but Americans must remember to put those problems in context with the problems of the current US system as well. It is true that people often wait to see a doctor in countries with UHC, but we in the United States wait as well, and we often schedule appointments weeks in advance, only to have onerous waits in the doctor's "waiting rooms."

Critical and urgent care abroad is always treated urgently, much the same as it is treated in the United States. The main difference there, however, is cost. Even health insurance policy holders are not safe from the costs of health care in the United States. Each day an American acquires a form of cancer, and the only effective treatment might be considered "experimental" by an insurance company and thus is not covered. Without medical coverage, the patient must pay for the treatment out of pocket. But these costs may be so prohibitive that the patient will either opt for a less effective, but covered, treatment; opt for no treatment at all; or attempt to pay the costs of treatment and experience unimaginable financial consequences. Medical bills in these cases can easily rise

into the hundreds of thousands of dollars, which is enough to force even wealthy families out of their homes and into perpetual debt. Even though each American could someday face this unfortunate situation, many still choose to take the financial risk. Instead of gambling with health and financial welfare, US citizens should press their representatives to set up UHC, where their coverage will be guaranteed and affordable.

Despite the opponents' claims against UHC, a universal system will save lives and encourage the health of all Americans. Why has public education been so easily accepted, but not public health care? It is time for Americans to start thinking socially about health in the same ways they think about education and police services: as rights of US citizens.

## Key Takeaways

- The purpose of argument in writing is to convince or move readers toward a certain point of view, or opinion.
- An argument is a reasoned opinion supported and explained by evidence. To argue, in writing, is to advance knowledge and ideas in a positive way.
- A thesis that expresses the opinion of the writer in more specific terms is better than one that is vague.
- It is essential that you not only address counterarguments but also do so respectfully.
- It is also helpful to establish the limits of your argument and what you are trying to accomplish through a concession statement.
- To persuade a skeptical audience, you will need to use a wide range of evidence. Scientific studies, opinions from experts, historical precedent, statistics, personal anecdotes, and current events are all types of evidence that you might use in

explaining your point.

- Make sure that your word choice and writing style is appropriate for both your subject and your audience.
- You should let your reader know your bias, but do not let that bias blind you to the primary components of good argumentation: sound, thoughtful evidence and respectfully and reasonably addressing opposing ideas.
- You should be mindful of the use of I in your writing because it can make your argument sound more biased than it needs to.
- Facts are statements that can be proven using objective data.
- Opinions are personal views, or judgments, that cannot be proven.
- In writing, you want to strike a balance between credible facts and authoritative opinions.
- Quantitative visuals present data graphically. The purpose of using quantitative visuals is to make logical appeals to the audience.
- Qualitative visuals present images that appeal to the audience's emotions.



## 79. Student Sample: Argument Essay

**Instructions:** Read the student essay, “Salvaging Our Old-Growth Forests.” First read the NON-ANNOTATED student essay, and then compare it to the ANNOTATED version of the same essay. Notice how the annotated comments analyze and respond to the essay.

As you review the annotations, notice how the feedback tracks the logical flow of the author’s arguments. The annotation comments are aimed at helping the author strengthen the power of the argument essay. This is a model for helpful annotation and feedback you can provide when you do the writing community review of your peers’ argument essays.

### Non-Annotated Student Essay

Click on the link to view the NON-ANNOTATED version of the student essay: “Salvaging Our Old-Growth Forests,” by Linder

### Annotated Student Essay

Click on the link to view the ANNOTATED version of the student essay: “Salvaging Our Old-Growth Forests,” by Linder



PART X

GRAMMAR/MECHANICS

MINI-LESSONS



# 80. Grammar/Mechanics

## Mini-lessons

Use these mini-lessons on grammar and writing mechanics to develop your writing skills based on feedback from the instructor and Writing Community Reviews. They include:

- Subjects and Verbs, Irregular Verbs, and Subject-Verb Agreement
- Sentence Types
- Fragments I
- Run-ons and Comma Splices I
- Comma Usage
- Parallelism
- The Apostrophe
- Capital Letters

Each lesson contains brief videos to teach you or refresh your understanding of proper grammar, punctuation and usage.

# 8I. Mini-lesson: Subjects and Verbs, Irregular Verbs, Subject Verb Agreement

To refresh your understanding of subjects, verbs, irregular verbs and subject-verb agreement, review the videos below:

*Subject and Verbs*



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online

here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=108#oembed-1>

*Irregular Verbs in the Past Tense*

<http://youtu.be/jJ5xnJyXvTk>

*Subject-Verb Agreement*



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online

here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=108#oembed-2>

## 82. Mini-lesson: Sentence Types

To refresh your understanding of different types of sentences, their grammar and structure, review the videos below:

*Simple Sentences and Compound Sentences*



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=109#oembed-1>

*Complex Sentences*



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=109#oembed-2>

*Compound Complex Sentences*





One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=109#oembed-3>



## 83. Mini-lesson: Fragments I

To refresh your understanding of sentence fragments, review the videos below:

### *Sentence Fragments*



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=110#oembed-1>

### *Sentence Fragments, How to Identify and Correct Them in Writing*



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=110#oembed-2>

### *Sentences and Sentence Fragments*



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online

here: [https://library.achievingthedream.org/  
herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=110#oembed-3](https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=110#oembed-3)

# 84. Mini-lesson: Run-ons and Comma Splices I

To refresh your understanding of run-on sentences and comma splice sentences, review the videos below:

## Run-on Sentences



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=111#oembed-1>

## Comma Splices and How to Fix Them



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=111#oembed-2>

## How to Avoid Run-on Sentences





One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=111#oembed-3>

## Identify and Fix Comma Splices



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=111#oembed-4>

# 85. Mini-lesson: Comma Usage

To refresh your understanding of how to correctly use commas, review the videos below:

*How to Use Commas – Overview*



*One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online*

*here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=112#oembed-1>*

*Using Commas Correctly*

*<http://youtu.be/pOwcovqtkGY>*

## 86. Mini-lesson: Parallelism

To strengthen your understanding of parallelism in sentence structure, review the videos below:

*Parallelism in Writing – What it is and how to avoid problems*



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=113#oembed-1>

*Parallelism in Grammar*



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://library.achievingthedream.org/herkimerenhancedwriting/?p=113#oembed-2>

# 87. Mini-lesson: The Apostrophe

To strengthen your understanding of how to use apostrophes correctly, review the video below:

*Using Apostrophes in Written English*

[http://youtu.be/\\_OKcB-aJtt4](http://youtu.be/_OKcB-aJtt4)

# 88. Mini-lesson: Capital Letters

To strengthen your understanding of proper use of capitalization in written English, review the video below:

*Capitalization in English Grammar and Writing*

[http://youtu.be/\\_5ARPVbljcU](http://youtu.be/_5ARPVbljcU)



## 89. Grammar Practice - Interactive Quizzes

For additional grammar practice, choose the topic(s) you want to develop by taking interactive quizzes from the *Guide to Grammar and Writing* on the following site.

Click the link to access the site: [Grammar Practice Site](#)

# 90. De Copia - Demonstration of the Variety of Language

In De Copia, Erasmus re-writes the same sentence over and over to demonstrate the variety of language.

You will be assigned a sentence to re-write 25-30 times.

Here is one example:

## **30 variations of “A loud sound awakes me in the night”**

1. In the bewitching hour, a resonant buzz raises me out of my crib.

2. A noisy growl returns me to my consciousness in the dead of night.

3. After dark, I am wide-awake because of a powerful bang.

4. I can no longer sleep due to the harsh noise in darkness of the day

5. I rise out of bed because of a deafening noise in the nighttime.

6. At the time when the moon is out high and bright, I become conscious due to a resonant sound.

7. A crazy roaring awakes me at the darkness of the day.

8. In the night, a blaring sound wakes me up.

9. The god of sleep has abandoned me when a loud noise strikes out in the night.

10. In the dark hours, a big wave of sound had me awakened.

11. I am awakened by the vociferous noise after dark.

12. I am forced to end my body resting process at bedtime due to a powerful boom after dark.

13. An extremely harsh buzz forces me out of my dream at the bewitching hour.

14. I am left alone by the god of dream and nightmare when a noisy sound bothers my ears.

15. In the night, a loud sound wakes me up.
16. After dark, I rise out of my crib because of an annoying wailing.
17. I wake up because of a heavy bang in the dark hours.
18. I become conscious due to a resonant sound in the dark time of the day.
19. After dark, an intense buzz forces me out of my body resting process.
20. I am awakened by the thundering sound when the sun had rested long time ago.
21. A powerful boom makes me rise out of my sleepiness in the pitch black.
22. A heavy cry awakes me in the dead of night.
23. A deafening noise in the nighttime has me rise out of bed.
24. An unpleasant sound has awakened me after dark.
25. At a bewitching hour, a blaring noise wakes me up.
26. My dream ends abruptly because of a noisy growl in the pitch-black time of the day.
27. In the night, I come to my conscious due to the blaring noise.
28. When the moon shines bright and high, I am forced out of my dream because of a thundering sound.
29. My sleep is ended when I hear a loud noise after dark.
30. In the night, a resonant howl awakes me.

# 91. Style Exercise: Voice

The *de copia* exercise is useful in showing how style – the third canon of rhetoric (invention, arrangement, style, memory, and delivery) – has a major impact on one’s writing. Paragraphs and essays that feature combined and varied sentences often shine the most.

For this exercise, I would like for you to try to transform your own writing to mimic another’s voice. This type of exercise is designed to help make you think about the choices a writer makes in designing his or her writing style.

You’ll complete four steps:

- Write a *brief* one-paragraph story that describes a key quality of yours to someone not in our class.
- Read the some sample passages and note their distinct writing styles. These are in very different genres, of course, but that’s part of the fun.
- Mimic one of those writing styles to re-tell your story. You can choose a different “audience” for your description if you’d like.
- **Answer the questions:** What choices did you make in re-designing your story? What obstacles did you face? How would you characterize your voice vs. the one you mimicked?

## PART XI

# COURSE INFORMATION

Course syllabus documents



## 92. Welcome

The “Course Information” documents in this section describe the course requirements and policies: Overview, Course Reading and Materials, Course Schedule, etc.. Read all of these documents carefully. If you have any questions, ask in an email to me, and I will get right back to you with a clarification. After reading through all of the Course Information documents you should have a clear picture of my expectations for the course. Feel free to print any of the documents if you are more comfortable with hard copies.

The Learning Modules can be accessed by clicking on the Learning Modules tab at the left of the screen. The Learning Modules contain the content, assignments, and learning activities for the course. This part of the course is where you will “attend class” on a regular basis. You should log on and participate as often as you can – but not less than four times per module. The Course Schedule document lists the start and end dates for the discussion forums in each module, and also lists the dates when you must complete Essays/Papers and your Writing Lab work..

Notice: If something in the course seems odd, or if you are not clear what you are expected to do, contact me.

### 1. Good News

We have the same goal for this semester—we both want you to successfully complete this class. In fact, it will be pretty hard for you to get an “F”—you will have to do NO work, vanish from the class, or rarely complete assignments. **If** you make reasonable efforts to do the work and ask for help

from me and the Academic Support Center or tutoring service, **you will not fail** this class!

**2. MORE Good News**

You will not be writing alone. I will not ask you to do any writing assignment that I have not done, and I will post many of them publicly, sometimes asking for your reaction. You will find out which parts of the writing process are difficult and which parts are easy and actually fun.

**3. REALLY Good News**

You have just saved \$ by enrolling in this writing section. How, you ask? In addition to the embedded videos and information provided within each module, we will be using a free online text for our class. You will also have access to a free MLA/APA Style Guide for research, and free grammar and usage exercises with explanatory information. SO—you have nothing to buy.



## 93. Course Schedule-What's Due When?

Pay close attention to these important dates. I suggest that you print this page and keep it next to your computer for frequent reference.

- The Icebreaker Module opens 1 week prior to the start of the course, and you should start on those activities as soon as possible.
- The discussion forums for each learning module open on the start date and close on the end date. **Posts submitted after the end date will not be graded.**
  - Submit your initial posts (1 post in the discussion forum) during the first 3 days that the module is open.
  - Log-on and participate in each discussion forum on at least 4 different days - spread evenly throughout the length of the module. This gives everyone in the class a chance to read and respond to posts.
  - Try VERY hard to submit your essays/papers and your writing lab assignments on time. Falling behind in your work is a sure enough way to do badly. I do not want that to happen to you.
  -

Module Assignments:	Discussion Forums begin	Discussion Forums end	Writing Assignments
Before the course begins: Read all of the "Course Information" documents. Complete the Icebreaker Activities.	Icebreaker Activities are available as of 8/21	Icebreaker Module ends on 9/4	All icebreaker activities ungraded
Module 1: The Writing Process	Discussions begin 8/28	Discussions end 9/11	<b>9/12 DUE</b> Essay 1 and Writing I
Module 2: Narrative	Discussions begin 9/13	Discussions end 9/27	<b>9/28 DUE</b> Essay 2 and Writing I
Module 3: Definition	Discussions begin 9/29	Discussions end 10/16	<b>10/17 DUE</b> Essay 3 and Writing I
Module 4: Research Project	Discussions begin 10/18	Discussions end 11/4	<b>11/5 DUE</b> Essay 4 and Writing I
Module 5: Argument/Persuasion	Discussions begin 11/6	Discussions end 11/21	<b>11/22 DUE</b> Essay 5 and Writing I
Module 6: Experiential (real-life) Essay	Discussions begin 11/26	Discussions end 12/6	<b>12/7 DUE</b> Essay 6 and Writing I
Module 7: Culminating Activities: Best Writing/Reflections	No Discussions Writing/Reflections begin 12/8	No Discussions Writing/Reflections End 12/12	<b>12/12 DUE</b> Culminating Activity
	<b>CLASSES END</b>	<b>12/12</b>	
Grades Submitted by Professor	<b>12/14</b>		<b>All Grades due 12/14</b>



# 94. Course Learning Activities

## Course Learning Activities

This is a college writing course; in fact, it's an "enhanced" writing course, which just means it's worth 3 credit hours, but it meets for 4 contact hours each week—giving you some extra help to insure a good grade and a successful experience. You may think that 15 pages of informal prose and 10 pages of formal prose sound like a lot. You will AMAZE yourself at how much you will produce, and how relatively painfree writing becomes for you.

The course is divided into SEVEN Learning Modules. In each module there is a discussion forum, a writing lab exercise/assignment, and an essay or paper. The various learning activities are detailed below.

**Essays and Papers are worth 50%** of your final grade. I will try to give you much leeway in choosing topics that mean something to you. I don't believe in assigning essays on "how I spent my summer vacation," or "why marijuana should be legalized." These topics have been exhausted long ago, and both writing about them and reading about them would be boring.

**Discussion forums will make up 25%** of your final grade. Each discussion will be worth 100 points, and these points are "guaranteed" to you if you follow the discussion directions and post the required number of times. Discussions are a way to connect with your classmates and with me, since I will participate in these forums. Commenting on your peers' writing

efforts is VERY helpful to them, and the feedback they provide on your writing can be very worthwhile.

**Writing Lab exercises and assignments will make up 25% of your final grade.** Because this section of College Writing has an extra contact hour each week, you will have extra help and practice working on your individual strengths and weaknesses. It is very important that you and I work together to identify what you do well and what areas of your writing need extra attention. For example, it makes no pedagogical sense to assign the whole class work on sentence fragments if only three of you ever write sentence fragments. Or, maybe six others have trouble with subject/verb agreement. So those six should focus on that issue

In your online FREE text, there is a whole section at the end that should help you work on your weaknesses once they have been identified. Here is a list of some mini-lessons you may find helpful:

Grammar/Mechanics Mini-lessons

Mini-lesson: Subjects and Verbs, Irregular Verbs, Subject Verb Agreement

Mini-lesson: Sentence Types

Mini-lesson: Fragments I

Mini-lesson: Run-ons and Comma Splices I

Mini-lesson: Comma Usage

Mini-lesson: Parallelism

Mini-lesson: The Apostrophe

Mini-lesson: Capital Letters

To sum it up, I will help you figure out what specific areas of your writing you need to work on most. Then, you will be assigned some exercises/activities to complete. Finally, you will go back to your own essay/paper and “fix” just the specific problem you’re

**focusing on. This is GOOD NEWS. You will focus on only a few of your major weaknesses—and you will learn that you also have major strengths in your writing.**

**You will find many practice exercises in your online textbook. For example, near the bottom of the Table of Contents you will see the following:**

## **Grammar Practice – Interactive Quizzes**

For additional grammar practice, choose the topic(s) you want to develop by taking interactive quizzes from the *Guide to Grammar and Writing* on the following site.

Click the link to access the site: [Grammar Practice Site](#)

## 95. How you will be evaluated

There are three types of assignments that will be evaluated and graded:

### 1) Writing Lab Exercises (25%),

These exercises are designed for you individually and are described in each module.

### 2) Papers/ Essays (50%)

Your prewriting and drafting efforts will be part of your essays/papers. The essays that you revise and edit to submit for course grades will constitute 50% of your final grade.

### 3) Discussion Forums (25%)

Just as with traditional face-to-face courses, you are expected to attend all classes and complete the assignments embedded in each learning module. This means that you must log on and complete some form of work (answer/ask questions, post responses, complete assignments,) at least three or four times a week. Please note, however, that logging on alone DOES NOT constitute attendance. Course related work must be completed each time you log on to count towards attendance.

The ungraded Icebreaker Module opens prior to the start of the course, and you should start on those activities as soon as possible.

The discussion forums for each learning module open on the start date and close on the end date. Discussion posts submitted after the end date will not be graded. Submit your initial discussion posts during the first 3 days that the module is open.



**Log-on and participate in the discussion forums on at least 4 different days.**

**I exercise the College's Administrative Withdrawal/Failure Option for those students who fail to log on AND complete work as required. This option states that, "after students miss 20% or more of the scheduled sessions (log on requirements) for a class, instructors may withdraw them from the class by completing the Administrative Drop Form."**

#### **Extra Credit / Make-up Work / Incomplete Grades**

**A requirement in this course is to discuss with other students and there is no substitute for this requirement. Also, there is no way to "go back" after a module has ended and "make-up" missed discussion activity, because there are no other students left to learn from your posts and discuss the content with you.**

**I do not accept "extra credit" or "alternative credit" assignments.**

**Finally, an incomplete in the course is not appropriate, as there is no way to complete the discussions once the course has ended and all of the other students are gone. In an extreme situation, such as your hospitalization, contact me as soon as possible to discuss emergency arrangements.**

#### **GRADES:**

**A+=97-100**

**A=93-96**

**A-=90-92**

**B+=87-89**

**B=83-86**

**B-=80-82**

**C+=77-79**

**C=73-76**

**C-=70-72**

**D+=67-69**

**D=63-66**

**D-=60-62**

**F=0 for an individual assignment or below 60 for final average**

**\*\*\* Remember my promise about F grades? It is HARD to earn an F. It means the assignment never existed—or it was stolen from someone else.**

Grade Book:

Online courses have special features that allow you to see your progress 24/7. Access is through the “My Grades” link in the Course Menu (on the left) or you can access the grade book through the “Report” tab.

### **Classroom Policies**

**Academic Disability Policy:** Students with disabilities who are seeking academic accommodations should contact Leslie Cornish in the Services for Students with Disabilities Office. The SSD Office is in room 115 of the Academic Support Center which is located in the Ronald F. Williams Library Building. The phone number is 866-0300 X 8331, or email [cornishld@herkimer.edu](mailto:cornishld@herkimer.edu).

**Academic Dishonesty Policy:** Academic dishonesty is defined as inappropriately assisting another student or receiving inappropriate assistance from any un-cited source or person. All assistance is considered inappropriate unless it is a specific requirement of an assignment. (Appropriate assistance includes

**providing information or answers to questions posted in class or group discussion forums.) Confirmed plagiarism or other forms of cheating will be subject to the following penalties:**

**First occurrence: The grade of “0” on the assignment.**

**Second occurrence: Course failure**

## 96. Course description and objectives

### Course Description

This course is designed to further develop students' reading and writing skills and strategies while enhancing mechanical, grammatical, and syntactical techniques. This course will include a lab hour during which students will workshop and revise assignments with the instructor and with their peers. This course is an intensive writing course that covers the following stages of writing: preliminary thought and discussion, research, organization, writing, revising, and editing. Students produce at least ten pages of formal prose intended for a critical eye as well as at least fifteen pages of informal work such as a personal journal. Students work in traditional rhetorical forms and write a research paper.

### Course Objectives

This course is designed to:

1. Teach students to overcome the “blank page syndrome”—the fear of beginning a writing assignment because of past unpleasant experiences.
2. Teach students to write unified, coherent paragraphs with details, examples, and evidence to support and clarify generalizations.
3. Teach students to proofread and revise mechanical errors and stylistic problems and determine appropriate diction for the audience and purpose.
4. Teach students to understand and perform the basic steps of research as well as how to incorporate

and document outside source material in a research project.

5. Teach students that writing is a process and that working with a community of writers makes the process manageable and enjoyable.

**This section** of the course is designed to:

1. Develop proficiency in critical thinking and self-determined learning.

2. Employ a variety of heutagogical learning activities. Simply stated, this means that adults learn best when they have a lot of control over what they learn and how they learn it. Students will identify issues that are personally interesting and relevant and then orchestrate learning activities that result in cognitive growth and enhanced writing ability.

3. Develop the students' capability for connecting discipline content to personal values and behavior.

#### **Student Learning Outcomes**

Students who successfully complete this course will be able to:

1. Effectively convey their thoughts in organized and structurally proficient prose.

2. Effectively convey their thoughts in clear, specific, and grammatically correct prose.

3. Effectively support their thoughts in research based, persuasive prose.

4. Effectively interpret, explain, and evaluate texts and information sources.

5. Effectively communicate using the appropriate vocabulary for the intended audience.

#### **ASSESSMENT of Course Objectives:**

1. Objective 1 is assessed via the Module Discussion Forums

2. Objective 2 is assessed via drop box essays
3. Objective 3 is assessed via the writing lab exercises and a paper

# 97. Instructions for Writing Lab

**An important aspect of this course is for you to identify and correct writing weaknesses. The Writing Lab is the place where you practice and develop your writing skills.**

**Directions:**

**1. You will receive various instructions for the Writing Lab. Sometimes you will work from ONLINE practice exercises. You will work often from my comments/corrections on your writing, and you will discover explanations and interactions in the SafeAssign program where you submit your work to me.**

**2. When you need to work more on specific problems, you will find an online grammar and usage section in your textbook.(It appears near the end of your textbook's Table of Contents.**

## **Grammar Practice – Interactive Quizzes**





For additional grammar practice, choose the topic(s) you want to develop by taking interactive quizzes from the *Guide to Grammar and Writing* on the following site.

Click the link to access the site: [Grammar Practice Site](#)

**3. My goal is to individualize your Writing Labs as much as possible. That is, if you never write sentence fragments, you won't be working on them. If you have problems switching back and forth from past to present tense, then you will be assigned work on that problem.**



PART XII

# ICEBREAKER ACTIVITIES



## 98. Icebreaker Activities

**The Icebreaker activities are ungraded. However, they are here to prepare you for success in this course.**

**Overview: The icebreaker activities include ONE discussion forum and one SafeAssign drop box assignment.**

**1. Complete the ABOUT ME assignment found below in the first Icebreaker discussion forum.**

**2. Complete the Icebreaker by following directions for writing a paragraph and submitting it via the SafeAssign drop box. If you have any questions, contact me via the course messages.**

# 99. SafeAssign Dropbox #1

This Assignment requires a dropbox.

**Assignment:** To complete this icebreaker activity

**Essay/Paper 1–** Compose a paragraph as directed below and then submit your essay in the SafeAssign drop box – this is where I would evaluate it if it were a graded assignment.

I need to find out quickly the best way I can help you to succeed in this class . So...first, please tell me whatever you can about your writing strengths and weaknesses. I'll give you some ideas to consider below.

Based on past writing experiences:

1. Are you good at coming up with ideas, brainstorming, mapping, making lists, pre-writing? OR–do you get STUCK looking at a blank page and not knowing where to start.

2. Are you good at organizing your ideas logically, so a reader can follow your train of thought and understand your points? OR–do you tend to ramble, go off-the topic, write vague statements that leave readers confused?

3. Is your writing interesting? Do you use good details, examples, personal anecdotes, specific images, so your reader can “get into” your writing? OR–do you get comments like “vague,” or ‘needs development’ on your papers?

4. Do you understand how to avoid sentence structure problems like fragments or comma splices/run on sentences? OR–is this an area that needs work?

5. Do you have a lot of trouble with basic grammar/spelling/usage of correct words? OR–are you basically

okay with these? \*\*\*\*GOOD NEWS-A SPELLING PROBLEM IS THE BEST Problem to have-it's so easy to fix.

6. Do you check your writing for errors? Do you read it aloud to someone else to catch any mistakes? Or- do you write one fast draft and turn it in?

Write a paragraph about your own writing as you understand it. Feel free to include examples or details to help me understand your particular situation. THEN submit it in the drop box.

Write for only 10-15 minutes, no longer. Do not pay any attention to spelling mistakes/grammar errors/punctuation. In other words, do not stop to worry if what you are writing is "correct." That does not matter until later in the course. Just try to get content down.

# 100. Discussion Forum #1

This assignment requires a discussion forum.

The first activity asks you to go to the ABOUT ME discussion below and post a paragraph about yourself. Then you will **respond to at least three posts** from others. This will prepare you for the graded discussions in this course.

In a few sentences, tell the class something about yourself: include where you are from and what your major is. Do NOT worry about making any mistakes! This first discussion will be ungraded. When you respond to a classmate's post try to connect with something the person said. For example, maybe you also went to an all-girls Catholic school, or maybe your parents came to America from Bosnia.

Follow these steps:

1. Use the "Create Thread" button to submit your OWN response
2. Use the "Reply" link to respond to a few comments posted by other students. You can use the response: "R to Jane" or "R to Professor" to identify the person.
3. Use the "Reply" link to respond to a student or two who responds to your post. You should have a total of at least THREE responses to other posts.

**SUPER IMPORTANT:** Making sure you do the discussions is the easiest possible way to get a wonderful grade. Consider this section of the course my gift to you. If you make the correct number of posts for each module, you **AUTOMATICALLY** earn 100



**points–SO, NEVER slack off on this part of the course.**



PART XIII

# THE WRITING PROCESS



# 101. The Writing Process

## Overview

This module contains an Introduction to the writing process, some helpful information on being specific, detailed, and concrete in your writing, and ONE discussion forum, ONE Writing Lab, and ONE essay/Paper.**\*\*\*PLEASE CHECK OUT THE VERY NICE SPECIFIC PARAGRAPH AT THE BOTTOM OF THIS SCREEN, WRITTEN BY A CLASSMATE.**

There are two objectives for this module:

1. Check out some common prewriting techniques to get you started.
2. Work on saying something worthwhile. Aim for specific, detailed, interesting content. **IF YOU HAVE PERFECT SPELLING AND FLAWLESS GRAMMAR, BUT YOUR ESSAY SAYS NOTHING WORTHWHILE-THIS IS THE MOST SERIOUS PROBLEM-THE OTHER PARTS OF WRITING SHOULD BE ADDRESSED IN THE EDITING/PROOFREADING STAGE-NOT UP FRONT.**

**NOW READ THE HELPFUL INFORMATION ON BEING SPECIFIC AND CONCRETE WHEN YOU WRITE. (See BELOW)**

Sometimes students come to college writing classes with a hopeless feeling. This is caused by many red pencil marks or low grades indicating errors/mistakes made on past writing assignments. I call this paralyzed feeling the **BLANK PAGE SYNDROME**. This happens when a writer sits for long periods of time staring at a blank page or screen, wondering where and how to begin. Self-doubts can make potentially good writers worry that they might make a mistake in spelling, or commit word usage errors, or write incomplete

sentences. My goal in this module is to introduce various prewriting strategies to help you avoid the dreaded “BLANK PAGE SYNDROME.” For now, your grade will not be affected by any errors you make in your writing. THAT COMES LATER IN THE PROCESS—DURING THE EDITING/PROOFREADING STAGE—NOT NOW DURING THE PLANNING/DRAFTING STAGES.

So, I believe firmly that writing is a process; I do not expect you to be experts in all phases of this process. If you were, you wouldn’t need to take this course. What I will do is focus on parts of your writing in each assignment. For this first graded essay I’m looking at your IDEAS—the actual CONTENT. Are you able to generate good solid ideas that will later become a polished, edited piece of writing. So, for this first graded assignment (worth 100 points) I would like you to try some prewriting strategies and then compose a paragraph

2. In your **online text** find the section labeled

## *An Overview of the Writing Process*

### “Videos: Prewriting Techniques”

1. Watch the videos on the various ways people plan and think before actually beginning to write. You will see videos on brainstorming, mindmapping, and freewriting.

2. Next, read the directions for your DISCUSSION FORUM and participate in the forum. **Make sure to return to the discussion and post at least THREE responses to earn your “guaranteed” 100 points.**

3. Find the WRITING LAB at the bottom of this

Learning Module and read instructions. Then complete your **first writing lab assignment** and submit it to me in the **WRITING LAB dropbox**. \*\*\*Your WRITING LAB work will be tailored to your individual needs in future modules.

4. Read the helpful information on being concrete and specific in the mini-lecture. Then complete the work assigned for your Essay/Paper and submit it in the SafeAssign dropbox.

**SAMPLE STUDENT PARAGRAPH:**

I was bored last night so I wasted time doing nothing. I sat on my boxy grey sectional couch watching the Girlfriends Guide to Divorce, while painting my toenails a deep purple color. The color was called Siberian Nights. I shouldn't have been painting my toenails on the couch. Last time I spilled Skating on Thin Iceland everywhere. I didn't notice it until it had started to harden on the blonde color hardwood floors. No matter how hard I scrubbed there was this faint circle with a reddish-purple rough edge around it permanently marking the floor. It reminded me of a discolored water stain.

# 102. Being Specific/Concrete

## Abstract, Concrete, General, and Specific Terms

#

---

This page was written by John Friedlander, associate professor in the English department at Southwest Tennessee Community College. It is used here with his permission.

---

### Introduction

Language may be our most powerful tool. We use it to understand our world through listening and reading, and to communicate our own feelings, needs and desires through speaking and writing. With strong language skills, we have a much better chance of understanding and being understood, and of getting what we want and need from those around us.

There are many ways to label or classify language as we learn to better control it—by levels, such as formal, informal, colloquial or slang; by tones, such as stiff, pompous, conversational, friendly, direct, impersonal; even by functions, such as noun, verb, adjective. I want to introduce you to a powerful way of classifying language—by levels of abstraction or concreteness or generality or specificity (any one of those four terms really implies the others).

Approaching language in these terms is valuable because it helps us recognize what kinds of language are more likely to be understood and what kinds are more likely to be misunderstood. The more abstract or general your language is, the more unclear and



boring it will be. The more concrete and specific your language is, the more clear and vivid it will be.

Let's look at these different types of language.

#### Abstract and Concrete Terms

**Abstract terms** refer to ideas or concepts; they have no physical referents.

[Stop right here and reread that definition. Many readers will find it both vague and boring. Even if you find it interesting, it may be hard to pin down the meaning. To make the meaning of this abstract language clearer, we need some examples.]

Examples of abstract terms include *love*, *success*, *freedom*, *good*, *moral*, *democracy*, and any *-ism* (*chauvinism*, *Communism*, *feminism*, *racism*, *sexism*). These terms are fairly common and familiar, and because we recognize them we may imagine that we understand them—but we really can't, because the meanings won't stay still.

Take *love* as an example. You've heard and used that word since you were three or four years old. Does it mean to you now what it meant to you when you were five? when you were ten? when you were fourteen (!)? I'm sure you'll share my certainty that the word changes meaning when we marry, when we divorce, when we have children, when we look back at lost parents or spouses or children. The word stays the same, but the meaning keeps changing.

If I say, "love is good," you'll probably assume that you understand, and be inclined to agree with me. You may change your mind, though, if you realize I mean that "prostitution should be legalized" [heck, love is good!].

How about *freedom*? The word is familiar enough, but when I say, "I want freedom," what am I talking about? divorce? self-employment? summer vacation? paid-off debts? my own car? looser pants? The meaning of *freedom* won't stay still. Look back at the other examples I gave you, and you'll see the same sorts of problems.

Does this mean we shouldn't use abstract terms? No—we need abstract terms. We need to talk about ideas and concepts, and we need terms that represent them. But we must understand how imprecise their meanings are, how easily they can be differently

understood, and how tiring and boring long chains of abstract terms can be. Abstract terms are useful and necessary when we want to name ideas (as we do in thesis statements and some paragraph topic sentences), but they're not likely to make points clear or interesting by themselves.

**Concrete terms** refer to objects or events that are available to the senses. [This is directly opposite to *abstract terms*, which name things that are **not** available to the senses.] Examples of concrete terms include *spoon*, *table*, *velvet eye patch*, *nose ring*, *sinus mask*, *green*, *hot*, *walking*. Because these terms refer to objects or events we can see or hear or feel or taste or smell, their meanings are pretty stable. If you ask me what I mean by the word *spoon*, I can pick up a spoon and show it to you. [I can't pick up a *freedom* and show it to you, or point to a small *democracy* crawling along a window sill. I can measure sand and oxygen by weight and volume, but I can't collect a pound of *responsibility* or a liter of *moral outrage*.]

While abstract terms like *love* change meaning with time and circumstances, concrete terms like *spoon* stay pretty much the same. *Spoon* and *hot* and *puppy* mean pretty much the same to you now as they did when you were four.

You may think you understand and agree with me when I say, "We all want success." But surely we don't all want the same things. Success means different things to each of us, and you can't be sure of what I mean by that abstract term. On the other hand, if I say "I want a gold Rolex on my wrist and a Mercedes in my driveway," you know exactly what I mean (and you know whether you want the same things or different things). Can you see that concrete terms are clearer and more interesting than abstract terms?

If you were a politician, you might prefer abstract terms to concrete terms. "We'll direct all our considerable resources to satisfying the needs of our constituents" sounds much better than "I'll spend \$10 million of your taxes on a new highway that will help my biggest campaign contributor." But your goal as a writer is not to

hide your real meanings, but to make them clear, so you'll work to use fewer abstract terms and more concrete terms.

---

### General and Specific Terms

General terms and specific terms are not opposites, as abstract and concrete terms are; instead, they are the different ends of a range of terms. **General terms** refer to groups; **specific terms** refer to individuals—but there's room in between. Let's look at an example.

*Furniture* is a general term; it includes within it many different items. If I ask you to form an image of furniture, it won't be easy to do. Do you see a department store display room? a dining room? an office? Even if you can produce a distinct image in your mind, how likely is it that another reader will form a very similar image? Furniture is a concrete term (it refers to something we can see and feel), but its meaning is still hard to pin down, because the group is so large. Do you have positive or negative feelings toward *furniture*? Again, it's hard to develop much of a response, because the group represented by this general term is just too large.

We can make the group smaller with the less general term, *chair*. This is still pretty general (that is, it still refers to a group rather than an individual), but it's easier to picture a chair than it is to picture *furniture*.

Shift next to *rocking chair*. Now the image is getting clearer, and it's easier to form an attitude toward the thing. The images we form are likely to be fairly similar, and we're all likely to have some similar associations (comfort, relaxation, calm), so this less general or more specific term communicates more clearly than the more general or less specific terms before it.

We can become more and more specific. It can be a *La-Z-Boy rocker-recliner*. It can be a *green velvet La-Z-Boy rocker recliner*. It can be a *lime green velvet La-Z-Boy rocker recliner with a cigarette burn on the left arm and a crushed jelly doughnut pressed into the*

*back edge of the seat cushion*. By the time we get to the last description, we have surely reached the individual, a single chair. Note how easy it is to visualize this chair, and how much attitude we can form about it.

The more you rely on general terms, the more your writing is likely to be vague and dull. As your language becomes more specific, though, your meanings become clearer and your writing becomes more interesting.

Does this mean you have to cram your writing with loads of detailed description? No. First, you don't always need modifiers to identify an individual: *Bill Clinton* and *Mother Teresa* are specifics; so are *Bob's Camaro* and *the wart on Zelda's chin*. Second, not everything needs to be individual: sometimes we need to know that Fred sat in a chair, but we don't care what the chair looked like.

---

## Summing Up

If you think back to what you've just read, chances are you'll most easily remember and most certainly understand the gold Rolex, the Mercedes, and the lime green La-Z-Boy rocker-recliner. Their meanings are clear and they bring images with them (we more easily recall things that are linked with a sense impression, which is why it's easier to remember learning how to ride a bike or swim than it is to remember learning about the causes of the Civil War).

We experience the world first and most vividly through our senses. From the beginning, we sense hot, cold, soft, rough, loud. Our early words are all concrete: nose, hand, ear, cup, Mommy. We teach concrete terms: "Where's baby's mouth?" "Where's baby's foot?"—not, "Where's baby's democracy?" Why is it that we turn to abstractions and generalizations when we write?

I think part of it is that we're trying to offer ideas or conclusions. We've worked hard for them, we're proud of them, they're what we want to share. After Mary tells you that you're her best friend, you hear her tell Margaret that she really hates you. Mrs. Warner

promises to pay you extra for raking her lawn after cutting it, but when you're finished she says it should be part of the original price, and she won't give you the promised money. Your dad promises to pick you up at four o'clock, but leaves you standing like a fool on the corner until after six. Your boss promises you a promotion, then gives it instead to his boss's nephew. From these and more specific experiences, you learn that you can't always trust everybody. Do you tell your child those stories? More probably you just tell your child, "You can't always trust everybody."

It took a lot of concrete, specific experiences to teach you that lesson, but you try to pass it on with a few general words. You may think you're doing it right, giving your child the lesson without the hurt you went through. But the hurts teach the lesson, not the general terms. "You can't always trust everybody" may be a fine main idea for an essay or paragraph, and it may be all that you want your child or your reader to grasp—but if you want to make that lesson clear, you'll have to give your child or your reader the concrete, specific experiences.

---

What principles discussed on this page are at work in the following excerpt from Jeff

Bigger's essay, **Searching for El Chapareke?** HIS WAS THE DAY the canyon walls of Cusare, a Tarahumara Indian village tucked into the Sierra Madres of Chihuahua in northern Mexico, bloomed with women in colorful skirts, legions of children trailed by dogs, men in their white shirts and sombreros, all cascading down the pencil-thin trails toward the plaza. The women — shifting babies saddled on their backs in rebozos — sat in groups by the mission walls, wordless for hours, drinking the weekly Coke, watching as the faithful went to attend mass, young men shot hoops, and the older men hovered around benches at the back of the plaza, waiting for the weekly outdoor meeting of the community cooperative. Pigs wandered down the road in idle joy, and the dogs fought on cue outside the small shop.

---

You can check out this principle in the textbooks you read and the lectures you listen to. If you find yourself bored or confused, chances are you're getting generalizations and abstractions. [This is almost inevitable—the purpose of the texts and the teachers is to give you general principles!] You'll find your interest and your understanding increase when the author or teacher starts offering specifics. One of the most useful questions you can ask of an unclear presentation (*including your own*) is, "Can you give me an example?"

Your writing (whether it's in an essay, a letter, a memorandum, a report, an advertisement, or a resume) will be clearer, more interesting, and better remembered if it is dominated by concrete and specific terms, and if it keeps abstract and general terms to a minimum. Go ahead and use abstract and general terms in your thesis statement and your topic sentences. But make the development concrete and specific.

---

#### A Final Note Pointing Elsewhere

Sometimes students think that this discussion of types of language is about vocabulary, but it's not. You don't need a fancy vocabulary to come up with *bent spoon* or *limping dog* or *Mary told Margaret she hates me*. It's not about imagination, either. If you have reached any kind of a reasoned conclusion, you must have had or read about or heard about relevant experiences. Finding concrete specifics doesn't require a big vocabulary or a vivid imagination, just the willingness to recall what you already know. If you really can't find any examples or specifics to support your general conclusion, chances are you don't really know what you're talking about (and we are all guilty of that more than we care to admit).

Where do these concrete specifics emerge in the writing process? *You should gather many concrete specifics in the prewriting steps of invention and discovery.* If you have many concrete specifics at hand *before* you organize or draft, you're likely to think and write more easily and accurately. It's easier to write well when you're closer to knowing what you're talking about.

You will certainly come up with more concrete specifics as you draft, and more as you revise, and maybe still more as you edit. But you'll be a better writer if you can gather some concrete specifics at the very start.

After you have read and thought about this material, you should have a fairly clear idea of what concrete specifics are and why you want them. Your next step will be to practice.

logo	<b>Guide to Grammar and Writing</b>	logo	<b>Principles of Composition</b>	logo	<b>Index</b>
------	---	------	--------------------------------------	------	--------------

The Guide to Grammar and Writing is sponsored by the Capital Community College Foundation, a nonprofit 501 c-3 organization that supports scholarships, faculty development, and curriculum innovation. If you feel we have provided something of value and wish to show your appreciation, you can assist the College and its students with a tax-deductible contribution. For more about giving to Capital, write to CCC Foundation, 950 Main Street, Hartford, CT 06103. Phone (860) 906-5102 or email: [jmcnamara@ccc.commnet.edu](mailto:jmcnamara@ccc.commnet.edu). Contributions are tax-deductible to the extent allowed by law.

## 103. Discussion Forum #2

This activity requires a discussion forum.

**“My new boss is really weird.”**

Rewrite this sentence adding details and specific content so I understand what YOU mean by weird. I'll start. \*\*\* THIS DOES NOT HAVE TO BE ABOUT A REAL PERSON-The assignment is to make clear your idea of “really weird.” MAKE SURE YOU HAVE A TOTAL OF FOUR POSTS TO EARN YOUR GUARANTEED 100 POINTS



# 104. INSTRUCTIONS FOR WRITING LAB #1

**When you submit work, click on WRITE SUBMISSION button. DO NOT submit in the COMMENTS section.**

*I think everyone can improve their writing by being specific and detailed and using examples instead of vague generalizations. Please read the information below and then complete the Dropbox assignment below in RED text.*

**“Replace abstract and general words with concrete and specific words. Abstract and general words allow multiple interpretations. Concrete words engage the five senses: see, hear, touch, smell, and taste. Specific words include real names, times, places, and numbers. Consequently, concrete and specific words are more precise and, therefore, more interesting. Abstract and general words are ambiguous and, therefore, dull:**

The food (general) was appealing (abstract).  
The warm bread with nut-brown crust and yeasty aroma made my mouth water (concrete and specific).

student’s report on his first impressions of a new apartment:  
A “New” Apartment in Nottingham Woods

Footprints marched across the ceiling.  
the living room ceiling  
stiff wedges of pizza  
pizza ground into the carpet

Footprints marched across the ceiling in the living room, and stiff wedges of pizza were ground into the carpet.

Light bulbs were smashed in their sockets.  
Several sets of initials were carved into the coffee table.  
torn sofa cushions  
cushions dusted with crushed saltines  
stale odor

dozens of Bud Lite cans lined up on the windowsills  
Bud Lite cans stacked up in a pyramid in one corner  
puddles of milk and orange juice in the kitchen  
half-empty dog food cans on the counter  
mound of eggshells in the sink

The refrigerator door was wide open.  
old tennis shoe inside the refrigerator

The bathroom was just as bad.  
shaving cream on the walls  
sock jammed into the drain of the bathtub  
name “Fred” written in toothpaste on the mirror.

**Read the page above this dropbox and pay attention to the vivid, lively, specific details used to describe the student’s apartment.**

### **Dropbox ASSIGNMENT**

2. Choose either A or B below and write a paragraph (a few sentences) using specific words instead of vague generalizations.

A. Last night I had a huge fight with my (friend/parent/child/loved one). We said and did awful things, but we finally stopped and made up.

**OR**

B. I hope my partner (spouse) (significant other) plans a romantic evening for us on Valentine’s Day.

## 105. Essay #1

This assignment requires a dropbox.

Read the following vague and unclear paragraph. Then rewrite it so that I can picture vividly what you mean. Change the general statements to something more specific and interesting.

DO NOT WORRY ABOUT ERRORS OR WRITING WEAKNESSES. I WILL GRADE THIS ONLY ON HOW WELL YOU MADE THE PARAGRAPH SPECIFIC, DETAILED, AND INTERESTING.

When I was in tenth grade I was a very poor student. Many days I would skip school and sleep in because it was too hot out or because the alarm went off too early. My sister always did better than I did. My relatives were always on my case. They said I'd never have a decent job and I'd be a loser. My girlfriend broke up with me one night because she'd had enough. I worried I'd never be rich or successful, so I changed in eleventh grade and did much better.



PART XIV  
NARRATIVE



# 106. Narrative Module

## Overview

There are TWO discussion forums in this module, an Essay/Paper, and a WRITING LAB assignment. [LOOK FOR THE WRITING LAB ASSIGNMENT AT THE BOTTOM OF THIS MODULE.](#)

1. Read the Sample Student Essay and focus on what the writer says she learned from this experience. Then participate in the first discussion forum.

2. Read the Professor's Essay and participate in the second discussion forum.

3. Compose your own Narrative Essay and submit your essay in the SafeAssign dropbox. This will generate an "Originality Report" which will: indicate all non-original content in your essay, show the earliest web source for this content, and display the total number of words in your review. It is especially important for you to avoid plagiarism. SafeAssign helps both student and teacher have confidence in the originality of the work submitted. After checking to make sure you have original material, submit the essay to me in the dropbox.

This will be your second GRADED writing assignment. The total number of possible points you can earn is 100. You have considerable flexibility in choosing a topic, and picking the right topic can help you a lot. There are a few points that are important to remember in narrative writing:

1. There must be a point to your story. That is, you should have learned something about yourself, about

other people, or about life in general from what happened to you. Do not create a “so-what” discovery. This means don’t write a paper that leaves your readers at the end saying “So What?” To make sure you have a significant point, complete the following sentence and post it in the Discussion Forum section of this module. When \_\_\_\_\_ happened to me, I learned \_\_\_\_\_.

2. Your narrative does not have to be shocking or dramatic, though it may be. You can find meaning in many simple experiences from daily life.

3. Your assignment will include reading two narratives—one written by a student and found in your online text, and the second written by me. When I post my own writing, it does not mean I think this is the BEST possible example, but I am fulfilling my commitment to write along with you whenever I can.

4. In this assignment do NOT worry about correct grammar or spelling or mechanics. THERE WILL COME A TIME FOR THAT—but it’s not now. I want you to focus all of your efforts on two things:

A. Give me lots of SPECIFIC details and EXAMPLES to make your story come alive and help me to understand what you went through. So—do NOT say: “I had a lousy time at the prom, and I never want to see that guy again.” SHOW and TELL me what “lousy” means—did your date make you change a flat tire on the way there? Did he show up drunk and throw up on your dress? Did she dance once with you and then leave with her old boyfriend? Make me FEEL what lousy means.

B) Do you have a significant POINT? What did you learn from this, besides the obvious? Maybe you learned that “first impressions don’t mean anything;”



or that “dating someone with a known alcohol problem is asking for trouble,” and so on....

These are the TWO CRITERIA I WILL USE IN GRADING THIS ASSIGNMENT. Proofreading and editing are important, but NOT YET.

Choose a topic for your own narrative essay. The topic you decide on should be something you care about, and the narration should be a means of communicating an idea that ties into the essay’s theme or point. Remember, in this essay, the narration is not an end in itself.

BELOW: I’ve given you a list of possible topics to get you thinking. You may pick one of these or choose something not on the list that is meaningful to you.

#### **FRIENDS**

Gaining independence

A friend’s sacrifice

A significant trip with your family

A wedding or a funeral

An incident from family legend

#### **THE WORLD AROUND YOU**

A storm, a flood, an earthquake, or another natural event

A school event

The most important minutes of a sporting event

#### **LESSONS OF DAILY LIFE**

A time you confronted authority

A time you had to deliver bad news

Your biggest social blunder

#### **FIRSTS**

Your first day of high school or college

The first performance you gave

A first date

Writing Your Narrative Essay

**When drafting your essay:**

**Develop an enticing title – although don't let yourself get stuck on the title. A great title might suggest itself after you've begun the prewriting and drafting processes.**

**Use the introduction to establish the situation the essay will address.**

**Avoid addressing the assignment directly. (For example, don't write "I am going to write about my most significant experience," because this takes the fun out of reading the work!)**

**Think of things said at the moment this experience started for you—perhaps use a quote, or an interesting part of the experience that will grab the reader.**

**Let the story reflect your own voice. (Is your voice serious? Humorous? Matter-of-fact?)**

**Organize the essay in a way that**

**Establishes the situation [introduction];**

**Introduces the complication(s) [body]; and**

**States the point or the lesson you learned [conclusion]**

## 107. Sample Student Essay

### My College Education

The first class I went to in college was philosophy, and it changed my life forever. Our first assignment was to write a short response paper to the Albert Camus essay “The Myth of Sisyphus.” I was extremely nervous about the assignment as well as college. However, through all the confusion in philosophy class, many of my questions about life were answered.

I entered college intending to earn a degree in engineering. I always liked the way mathematics had right and wrong answers. I understood the logic and was very good at it. So when I received my first philosophy assignment that asked me to write my interpretation of the Camus essay, I was instantly confused. What is the right way to do this assignment, I wondered? I was nervous about writing an incorrect interpretation and did not want to get my first assignment wrong. Even more troubling was that the professor refused to give us any guidelines on what he was looking for; he gave us total freedom. He simply said, “I want to see what you come up with.”

Full of anxiety, I first set out to read Camus’s essay several times to make sure I really knew what was it was about. I did my best to take careful notes. Yet even after I took all these notes and knew the essay inside and out, I still did not know the right answer. What was my interpretation? I could think of a million different ways to interpret the essay, but which one was my professor looking for? In math class, I was used to examples and explanations of solutions. This

assignment gave me nothing; I was completely on my own to come up with my individual interpretation.

Next, when I sat down to write, the words just did not come to me. My notes and ideas were all present, but the words were lost. I decided to try every prewriting strategy I could find. I brainstormed, made idea maps, and even wrote an outline. Eventually, after a lot of stress, my ideas became more organized and the words fell on the page. I had my interpretation of “The Myth of Sisyphus,” and I had my main reasons for interpreting the essay. I remember being unsure of myself, wondering if what I was saying made sense, or if I was even on the right track. Through all the uncertainty, I continued writing the best I could. I finished the conclusion paragraph, had my spouse proofread it for errors, and turned it in the next day simply hoping for the best.

Then, a week or two later, came judgment day. The professor gave our papers back to us with grades and comments. I remember feeling simultaneously afraid and eager to get the paper back in my hands. It turned out, however, that I had nothing to worry about. The professor gave me an A on the paper, and his notes suggested that I wrote an effective essay overall. He wrote that my reading of the essay was very original and that my thoughts were well organized. My relief and newfound confidence upon reading his comments could not be overstated.

What I learned through this process extended well beyond how to write a college paper. I learned to be open to new challenges. I never expected to enjoy a philosophy class and always expected to be a math and science person. This class and assignment, however, gave me the self-confidence, critical-thinking skills,

and courage to try a new career path. I left engineering and went on to study law and eventually became a lawyer. More important, that class and paper helped me understand education differently. Instead of seeing college as a direct stepping stone to a career, I learned to see college as a place to first learn and then seek a career or enhance an existing career. By giving me the space to express my own interpretation and to argue for my own values, my philosophy class taught me the importance of education for education's sake. That realization continues to pay dividends every day.

## 108. EFFIE

Effie and I share a birthday. She was born on February 17th, 1920, the year that women were given the right to vote. I was born twenty-seven years later, one of the early baby boomers. Aside from the shared birthday, I wondered what we could possibly have in common. On my first hospice call to The Palms Rehabilitation facility, from which few escape except via hearse, I saw a tiny, shriveled woman lying in her single bed with eyes tightly shut. “She’s playing dead,” the charge nurse informed me. I stayed only fifteen minutes, spoke to her tentatively, and determined that she was playing her role convincingly. Effie has many diagnoses, including cerebral vascular disease, skin cancer, and mental illness. She is my first dying crazy person. I’ve met dementia in many forms, but Effie is not demented as in Alzheimer’s or memory loss.. She is psychotic. Our first attempt at a conversation finds me trying to follow the twists and turns and loop-backs and fast forwards of Effie’s thoughts, as she cries, pounds the bedclothes in anger, and rages at life, or at her lost grasp of it. “The short-legged orange ones steal”, she warns me. She knows, somehow, that I’m not a part of The Palms, and she speaks to me as her guest, never hurling hateful curses in my direction. In time, we bond . How? We are both grand-ma- niacs. My five grandchildren live a thousand miles away, and my grandma-crazy love for them overwhelms me. I cry always when I leave them. Effie comforts herself, when she is calm enough to be comforted, with a newborn size rubber baby doll, who easily shape-shifts from boy

to girl to “both,” she tells me. She kisses it often, proudly shows me its bright blue eyes and “sweet” little toes. “Give me some sugar,” she says. The mute baby never refuses. In turn, I show her pictures of my beautiful blue-eyed granddaughter, Lindsay, and newborn grandson, Andrew. The following week I bring glossy photos of Devin, Emily, and Lauren to be admired. She praises their beauty but assures me her baby is “just some” cuter. Her eyes flash and her cheek muscles twitch as she rants against the medical people there, the ones who mock her for playing with dolls. “I don’t care!” she cries. “It’s the only thing I have, and he’ll never leave me. I wrote my name on his back. See? I cry at night, and then I put him on my shoulder and he calms me right down and then we both sleep. He’s such a good baby.” One week I can’t find Effie in her room. Amazed, I spot her strolling down the hallway, baby clutched tightly to her chest. “I thought she was bedridden,” I say to one of the orange ones. “Oh, no. She can walk. In fact, she can do whatever she damn well pleases. And she does.” I know from my first visit that Effie is not the ward favorite. She sits down next to me in the community room. Her full, curly gray hair is held back from her face with a purple satin ribbon. She wears an expensive-looking red jacket over purple slacks and purple satin slippers. This time she talks nonstop. She is more coherent than before, and I try to pick out the bits of truth from the confusing sidetracks. She has borne seven children. Two sons died; one in the Navy, the other at Sebastian Inlet, during what might have been a fishing trip. She cries as she talks. She and her husband John, now “very sick with glaucoma,” worked side-by-side in a furniture store for twenty-seven years. He wrote her a beautiful

anniversary (or maybe Valentine's card) which she treasures. He wrote: "You made me everything I am today." They loved each other always, though she will never forgive him for moving her from the "paid up" house on Avocado Ave. to the "way-too-big house " on the river. He wouldn't listen to her. Worse, he didn't put her name on the deed, and she never had a penny of her own, even though she had worked beside him for all those years. I believe her. I 'm getting better at sorting phrases and little stories into two mental file cabinets. The story about having two-week-old beef stew for breakfast goes into the false drawer. The comment that John made the best, fluffiest pancakes in the world gets sorted into the true drawer. During my next visit I bring several newborn baby outfits to try on "it," thanks to my niece, who has recently given birth to a baby girl. The outfits are very pink. I tell Effie the baby won't care, but Effie seems more worried that these clothes will be stolen. She reminds me that "he" can be a "she" if she decides it. I'm all in favor of gender-neutral infant clothing, so this is welcome news. I have to cajole Effie into letting me hold the baby to try on a couple of outfits. She finally agrees, cautioning me to "watch his little head, and don't cover up his feet. He doesn't like that." I choose a onesie, decorated with pink and red hearts. It will be Valentine's day soon. I tell her that each heart means "I love you." Before I pass the infant back, I kiss it three times, mimicking Effie's ritual. She smiles, she thanks me, she shows the new outfit to the security guard passing by. Next week Effie and I will celebrate our birthdays together. I plan to bring vanilla cupcakes and "fudge with the crisscross lines on it." And, of course, a new outfit for the baby.



## 109. Discussion Forum #3

This assignment requires a discussion forum.

I'd like you to try out this formula to find a point for narrative writing. WHEN\_\_\_\_\_happened, I learned \_\_\_\_\_. For this discussion, please use my (Professor's) essay about Effie. There are many things I might have learned from that experience. Write a sentence stating what you found as a point, using the formula: "When my Professor was a hospice volunteer, she learned \_\_\_\_\_." Then, remember to go back and respond to at least THREE other posts. \*\*\*THUS, YOU HAVE A TOTAL OF FOUR POSTS (AT MINIMUM). IF YOU DO THIS, YOU WILL HAVE EARNED 100 POINTS FOR DISCUSSION IN THIS MODULE.

**Remember: Avoid "so-what" discoveries. For example, do not say "Professor learned that hospital staff wear orange." Look for something that would be more general-something that would carry over into my life in the future. Maybe "Professor learned that hospital staff sometimes mistreat their patients, and that patients who complain may be telling the truth."**

## 110. Discussion Forum #4

This assignment requires a discussion forum.

Now it's time to try out your own main idea sentence; that is, explain what you learned from your experience. So, now write: When -----happened to me, I learned -----. Make sure it's not a "So WHAT" discovery. In other words, do not say "when my kitten died, I learned that all cats die." I suspect you knew that before anyway. You might have said: "when my kitten died, I learned that I hide my emotions in times of sadness." That would be a discovery that would also apply to future events in your life.

\*\*\*If your narrative is very "personal," you may use the course email and send this to me privately, and I will comment. Still respond to at least 3 other posts.

# III. Instructions for Writing Lab #2

Go back and click on your first piece of writing—for most of you, this will be your ICEBREAKER paragraph/essay that you submitted to SafeAssign. You will see my comments and corrections throughout

your essay. PAY ATTENTION, also, to the additional summary comments I wrote to you. EVERYONE should have my detailed comments on this original piece. If you somehow missed doing this ICEBREAKER, then look at the first piece of graded writing (essay/paper) for Module #1 on the Writing Process. NOW is the time to begin work on some weaknesses that you might have.

For your Writing Lab, choose FIVE of the errors in your first piece of writing. For each one, rewrite the sentence where the error is, and EXPLAIN what you did wrong. Try to choose errors that are important—not just typos. You can click on the comment on SafeAssign and see the explanation, or see my own comments to you.

When you have finished, submit your work to the WRITING LAB dropbox.

This is worth 100 points.

## 112. Narrative Essay

This assignment requires a dropbox.

When you submit work, click on WRITE SUBMISSION button. DO NOT submit in the COMMENTS section.

PART XV  
DEFINITION



## 113. Module #3 Overview

This module contains one discussion, an essay/paper, and a writing lab.

1. Read in your online textbook: HOW TO WRITE A DEFINITIONAL ESSAY.

In our academic lives, we are exposed to new words and terms all the time: We might learn new terms—or more complicated applications of words we thought we already know—as we study history, biology, literature, or other disciplines. This happens in our everyday lives as well; we hear new words from different cultures, different technologies, and different generations. Often, when we want to know a word or a term's definition, we think of looking in the dictionary, of going to an acknowledged, credible source to find out what a word means. We don't necessarily think of definitions as debatable, as arguments, and many words, in many situations, are not. When you hear someone tell a teenager or young adult to act like an "adult," you probably don't think of that person acting like a 14-year-old. You know what the word "adult" means! But you also probably know that in a different context that word that you know so well may be contested. In criminal law, for example, a 14-year-old might be tried as an "adult" in a court if he or she has committed certain crimes. And 200 years ago, a 14-year-old was very much an adult in terms of being able to work or even marry. And in some parts of the world, that is still the case.

So once we think about it, we realize that dictionaries aren't the only sources of definitions. Often how a word

is defined is very debatable; often, indeed, it's the foundation of an argument. For example, before a court can decide to try a 14-year-old as an adult, there must be agreement on what being an adult means in this particular legal term (that is, in terms of behavior, knowing right from wrong, etc.). How a court defines "adult" will likely be very different from the way a biologist defines "adult", which will vary still from the way a psychologist defines it.

In college and the professional world, you will often be expected to memorize established definitions of terms. But you will often need to be able to understand and enter the debate over definitions that are contested. In this expository essay, you will define an abstract term that may be contested.

#### Overview of assignment

For this paper, you will choose a debatable term that is of interest to you. You will define the term using whatever evidence you determine to be the most compelling and uniquely describe the term you are defining. Make sure that the definition is your own and that it is not simply a different meaning of a word with multiple interpretations.

#### Purpose

Your broader purpose here is to enter into a more expansive conversation about your term, but you must still shape — and make clear to your audience — your more specific purpose. Your goal in this paper is to reflect on and articulate the meaning of a word or term that has some resonance for you. For your reader, the paper should offer a clear sense of what you think the term means, how your thoughts connect to what others think of the term, why and in what context the definition matters.



What you should not do in this essay is define something the way we already know it; in other words, try not to tell us that a computer is a machine for accessing the World Wide Web and Word processing. We don't need to read that compromise is finding an in-between in a conflict. Aim for something clear, specific, understandable to your reader. Remember, it is YOUR definition—it doesn't have to agree with everyone else's. SLANG terms are especially in need of definition, so you may choose from the list I provided.

**1. Read in your online textbook: HOW TO WRITE A DEFINITIONAL ESSAY.**

**2. For your Definition Essay:**

- 1. introduce the term and state why it needs to be defined fully. AN EASY WAY TO INTRODUCE YOUR SLANG TERM IS TO GIVE THE ORIGIN OF THE WORD—THAT IS, HOW DID YOUR WORD BECOME WHAT IT MEANS TO YOU TODAY? A DICTIONARY OF SLANG CAN BE HELPFUL HERE—OR JUST A REGULAR DICTIONARY FOUND ONLINE.**
- 2. write a paragraph using your OWN personal example of what the word means to you—this does NOT have to agree with other people's meaning.**
- 3. write another paragraph, but this time use a famous person or situation that helps explain YOUR meaning. E.g., maybe Charles Manson fits your meaning of “cray-cray” Explain fully the example you use of this famous person—it can be a real person or a character in a movie, book, or tv series that meets your definition**
- 4. In your next paragraph, anticipate and respond to possible objections/arguments. In other words,**

*explain that what someone else might think of the term is NOT what you're talking about.*

5. *Conclude by summing up your main points and perhaps arguing that your definition is a very logical/sensible one.*

## 114. Discussion Forum #5

This assignment requires a discussion forum.

**Post a slang term you hear used frequently–(please stay away from the obscene or offensive).**

**Make sure you define what the slang term means as you understand it. Then respond to THREE other posts.**

# 115. READ in ONLINE Textbook

*In your online text, go to An Overview of the Writing Process. In that section, read the information about Writing a Thesis, Paragraphs, and Organizing.*

**In this module I'll be looking for two important aspects of your writing: ORGANIZATION OF IDEAS AND DEVELOPMENT OF IDEAS**

**After prewriting, (Module 1) you'll want to develop an initial draft that starts the writing. With this draft, you just want to aim to get some ideas down, and use specific details and examples (Module 2). Now you need to focus on organizing your thoughts on paper. This is a time for developing your thinking.**

Once you develop this draft, take some time to reflect about the organization of your ideas by asking the following questions: how logical is my writing? are there any gaps in the development of ideas? is there repetition? does the paper flow easily?

Go to your online textbook and read the material assigned. (See separate page below).

*In your online text, go to An Overview of the Writing Process. In that section, read the information about Thesis Statements, Organizing an Essay and Creating Paragraphs.*

**for this paper, I'll be looking at these three**

**things when I assign a grade—along with the other criteria I’ve mentioned before—e.g., using specific details and developing interesting content, and having a “point” to your writing.**

## 116. Instructions for Definition Essay

When you submit work, click on WRITE SUBMISSION button. DO NOT submit in the COMMENTS section.

There are 11 terms below. Some are current slang terms; others are just abstract words that mean different things to different people. Choose ONE of them and write a five paragraph essay defining the term as you understand it.

Epic fail

Cray or cray-cray

Hero

Swag/swaggy

Lit

Bae

Body-shaming

Dope (as an adjective)

Winning

Patriot

Loser

# 117. Instructions for Writing Lab #3

When you submit work, click on **WRITE SUBMISSION** button. **DO NOT** submit in the **COMMENTS** section.

Go back and click on your **narrative** essay that you submitted to SafeAssign. You will see my comments and corrections throughout your essay. **PAY ATTENTION**, also, to the additional summary comments I wrote to you. **EVERYONE** should have my detailed comments on this original piece. If you somehow missed doing this narrative, then look at the first piece of graded writing (essay/paper) for Module #1 on the Writing Process. I'll be asking you to continue working on any writing weaknesses in **EACH** Writing Lab.

For your Writing Lab, choose **FIVE** of the errors from your writing. For each one, rewrite the sentence where the error is, and **EXPLAIN** what you did wrong. Try to choose errors that are important—not just typos. You can click on the comment on SafeAssign and see the explanation, or see my own comments to you.

When you have finished, submit your work to the **WRITING LAB** dropbox.

This is worth 100 points.

# 118. Definition Essay

This assignment requires a dropbox.

When you submit work, click on WRITE SUBMISSION button. DO NOT submit in the COMMENTS section.



PART XVI

# RESEARCH PROJECT



# 119. Research Project Overview

This module contains three parts: a **DISCUSSION**; an **Essay/Paper**; a **Writing Lab**.

I do research almost every day—sometimes many times a day. With the Internet, it is ever so easy to look up just about anything I need to know. For example, so far today I’ve googled “weather in Herkimer,” “multifocal cataract surgery,” “cutting loose hair salon driving directions,” “James Comey, FBI,” and “biking trails Cape Cod Seashore.” And it’s not even noon yet! Research is not only required in college courses, it can also be interesting and fun. The key is understanding how to gather information in a variety of ways, not just by searching through library stacks to find books. You can, of course, get information from “brick and mortar” libraries or online libraries. But you can also use search engines to access Internet resources, you can do personal interviews, administer surveys, talk to experts in your subject, read blogs or join user groups where appropriate.

Learning Activities for your Research Project

1. Read in your Online Text the chapter on USING SOURCES. You may just skim through parts of the chapter, but refer back to it from time to time, for example when you prepare your Works Cited page.

2. Do some prewriting to explore a few topics. IMPORTANT: Choose something you are genuinely interested in and you NEED TO KNOW. For example, maybe you’re not sure of your college major, and you

need to explore job possibilities in your field. This is definitely a “NEED TO KNOW” topic. Or, perhaps your significant other needs a new laptop and you are a generous soul, so you NEED TO KNOW which laptop to buy him/her for a gift. Maybe you’re planning to get a pet for your children, but you’re not sure what breed would be best. Again you NEED TO KNOW this. Or, your Uncle George has just been diagnosed with chlamydia and you NEED TO KNOW all you can about this disease so you can help him through it.

IMPORTANT: Choose a topic that you really NEED TO KNOW about, and the research will be interesting to you and to the reader. The good news in this class is that I do not assign research topics—you choose your own, and I will help you narrow it down, find ways to get your information, help you with writing and organizing your material, and check your research for correct documentation of sources.

3. Go to the **discussion** forum below and help your classmates and yourself choose a workable topic.

4. Generate a list of questions that you need to answer, and then make a list of sources to explore. For example, I need to know about cataracts, and I posed some questions in the discussion forum. Here’s a possible list of sources I might investigate:

a. Google the term and read two articles online. I would make sure I wasn’t reading ADS, but legitimate medical sources such as the MAYO clinic or Ophthalmology Journal.

b. I might go to the office of a nearby eye doctor and collect brochures on cataracts. I might also request a quick interview with the doctor.

c. I could get anecdotal evidence from three senior

citizens who have had cataracts removed. (I must remember this is anecdotal—not scientific material).

d. I could check my local library and ask the research librarian to help me find materials (books/medical journals). I could skim through a few printed sources and take notes—remembering to document where I got my information.

e. I might go online again and look for blogs or user groups dealing with cataracts. These sources can be very helpful, but always keep in mind you're getting personal opinions, not documented facts.

5. Now it's time to organize your material and get some content down on paper. I've found that an easy way to organize is to USE YOUR QUESTIONS, and arrange them in logical order. Then, proceed to answer your questions using the research you've gathered together. **MAKE SURE TO CITE YOUR SOURCES/ DOCUMENT WHERE YOU GOT YOUR INFORMATION. You will need to go to your online textbook (see #1 above) now and really pay attention to the correct form for citing sources. NOW IS A GOOD TIME TO VISIT YOUR LEARNING /TUTORING CENTER FOR HELP if you aren't clear about this.**

6. Write your paper; You should have as many paragraphs as you have questions to answer, plus an introduction and conclusion. **YOU NEED A MINIMUM OF THREE (3) DIFFERENT SOURCES FOR THIS PAPER!**

7. Check for correct documentation within the paper, AND for a proper WORKS CITED page. \*\*\*GO BACK TO THE TEXTBOOK CHAPTER "USING SOURCES." You need to choose either MLA Style or APA Style. You do not need to read about both. Generally, if you will be majoring in the Social Sciences you would be using APA Style. General Studies/Humanities majors would use MLA Style. If you don't know, use MLA Style as your default.

It is especially important for you to avoid plagiarism in this assignment. MAKE SURE YOU UNDERSTAND WHAT PLAGIARISM IS AND HOW TO AVOID IT!

**\*\*\*USING SafeAssign MEANS YOU WILL BE ABLE TO AVOID PLAGIARISM, SINCE it “catches” this.**

FINALLY, submit your essay to the SafeAssign dropbox  
**LOOK FOR THE WRITING LAB ASSIGNMENT AT THE BOTTOM OF THE LEARNING MODULE.**

## 120. Discussion Forum #6

This assignment requires a discussion forum.

In this discussion I'd like you to help each other by commenting on the possible topics. For example, maybe a topic seems too broad—like “why do we have war?” Also, please make suggestions to your classmates on how to find information on their topic. For example, if someone is researching “how autism is diagnosed,” maybe you know about a support group for parents of autistic children, and you could refer your classmate to that group.

Start your own discussion post with the phrase “I need to know————” Fill in the blank with your research topic, and try to make it as specific and detailed as possible. Remember to respond to at least 3 other posts.

# 121. Research Project

- This assignment requires a dropbox.

When you submit work, click on WRITE SUBMISSION button. DO NOT submit in the COMMENTS section.



## 122. Instructions for Writing Lab #4

**This assignment requires a dropbox.**

When you submit work, click on [WRITE SUBMISSION](#) button. [DO NOT](#) submit in the [COMMENTS](#) section.

Go back and click on your **Definition** essay that you submitted to SafeAssign. You will see my comments and corrections throughout

your essay. **PAY ATTENTION**, also, to the additional summary comments I wrote to you. **EVERYONE** should have my detailed comments on this piece. If you somehow missed doing this essay, then look at the first piece of graded writing (essay/paper) for Module #2 on Narrative or any earlier module. I'll be asking you to continue working on any writing weaknesses in **EACH** Writing Lab.

For your Writing Lab, choose **FIVE** of the errors from your writing. For each one, rewrite the sentence where the error is, and **EXPLAIN** what you did wrong. Try to choose errors that are important—not just typos. You can click on the comment on SafeAssign and see the explanation, or see my own comments to you.

When you have finished, submit your work to the **WRITING LAB** dropbox.

This is worth 100 points.



PART XVII

# ARGUMENT/PERSUASION



## 123. Module Overview

In this module, you will read a chapter in your online text, then view a TED talk , decide on one of two assigned topics, write your argument, read it to another person, and finally, submit it to me in the SafeAssign drop box. This particular assignment is perhaps the most typical of the kind of essay you will be asked to write in college classes. It is the standard “five paragraph” essay, requiring you to support a thesis with logical evidence, and also consider the opposite side of the argument. \*\*\*ALSO, because I want this to be typical of work you would turn in for any class, THIS time you will be graded on grammar, usage, sentence structure, spelling, etc. LOOK back at your writing labs to see the areas you need to really watch. EVERYONE should use the spellcheck feature for this and any following assignments—it will catch most of your spelling errors. AND have someone proofread for you—we ALL need another person to check our writing, since we rarely see our own errors.

1. Read in online text “Writing for Success: Argument” in the Argument/Persuasion chapter
2. View the TED talk in the link below.

3. Respond to both discussions. Both deal with as aspect of the texting issue.

4. Examine the assignment choices below: Two opposing points of view.

5. Engage in some prewriting activity to help you decide which side of the argument you want to support. (See my prewriting notes—pros and cons of texting—below.

6. Review the checklists of important points below (taken from the online text)

7. Develop an outline for your 5 paragraph essay.

1. Intro.

2. First argument in support of your position.

3. Second argument in support of your position.

4. Paragraph dealing with and refuting an opposing point of view.

5. Summary and conclusion.

## The Structure of an Argumentative Essay

The following five features make up the structure of an argumentative essay:

1. Introduction and thesis
2. Opposing and qualifying ideas
3. Strong evidence in support of claim
4. Style and tone of language
5. A compelling conclusion

## *Developing Sound Arguments*

Use the following checklist to develop sound arguments in your essay:

- An engaging introduction
- A reasonable, specific thesis that is able to be supported by evidence
- A varied range of evidence from credible sources
- Respectful acknowledgement and explanation of opposing ideas
- A style and tone of language that is appropriate for the subject and audience
- Acknowledgement of the argument's limits
- A conclusion that will adequately summarize the essay and reinforce the thesis

PREWRITING: -write down thoughts/ideas as they occur to you about texting-maybe review some of your own texts for examples.

HERE IS MY OWN LIST OF PREWRITING THOUGHTS:

MY autocorrect is so screwy-results in too many miscommunications-e.g. DEMON for DEVIN

Can make me seem illiterate-depends on audience-e.g. U R CRAZee...it's embarrassing if people think I'm illiterate, since I'm an English professor.

Easier than leaving phone messages and I can respond when I choose

Works when I don't have wireless Internet access

Can be horrifying-e.g. LOL meaning laugh out loud or lots of love.....

Lets people off the hook instead of confronting in person or on phone-both plus and minus

Definitely depends on audience for understanding -NOT understanding can lead to hurt feelings or angry arguments!

I wouldn't use txtng with my college president or my grandfather—wrong audience

### **Assignment Choices for Essay:**

1. TED Talk is titled “Texting is Killing Language” Argue that this is true. Use specific personal examples or anecdotes, research expert opinion, and be sure to deal with the opposite side of the argument. With an introduction and conclusion this becomes the standard five paragraph essay required in many college courses.

### **OR– DO EITHER 1 OR 2–NOT BOTH**

2. In the above TED talk, the speaker says that “texting is a linguistic miracle.” Argue that his position is true. Use specific personal examples or anecdotes, include points made in the TED talk for your expert opinion, and deal with the opposite side of the argument. With an introduction and conclusion, this becomes the standard five paragraph essay assigned in many college courses.

**EDITING CHECKLIST: READ YOUR ESSAY TO SOMEONE ELSE—THIS CAN BE ANYONE YOU TRUST TO LISTEN CAREFULLY AND MAKE HELPFUL COMMENTS.**

Ask your listener to look for the following and jot down a few notes to discuss with you.

What is the author's thesis?  
What key points does the author use to argue the thesis?



**How does the author use reasoning, research and/or examples to affirm her viewpoint?**

**How does the author attempt to refute opposing arguments?**

**Did this argument convince you or leave you with too many questions?**

**LOOK FOR THE WRITING LAB ASSIGNMENTS AT THE BOTTOM OF THE LEARNING MODULES.**

124. Txtng is killing  
language...

## 125. Discussion Forum #7

**This assignment requires a discussion forum.**

Discuss the ideas presented by John McWhorter as he speaks about how language is evolving. You should post at least one thought and comment at least 3 times on your classmates' posts.

## 126. Discussion Forum #8

This assignment requires a discussion forum.

First, copy a text message you recently sent to a friend. Then rewrite this same conversation as a note to your grandmother (or another senior citizen). Post both versions in this discussion and remember to comment on other posts. I'll begin.

# 127. Instructions for Writing Lab #5

This assignment requires a dropbox.

When you submit work, click on WRITE SUBMISSION button. DO NOT submit in the COMMENTS section.

**Go back and click on your Research essay that you submitted to SafeAssign. You will see my comments and corrections throughout your essay. PAY ATTENTION, also, to the additional summary comments I wrote to you. EVERYONE should have my detailed comments on this piece. If you somehow missed doing this essay, then look at one of your earlier pieces of graded writing (essay/paper) from any other module. I'll be asking you to continue working on any writing weaknesses in EACH Writing Lab.**

**For your Writing Lab, choose FIVE of the errors from your writing. For each one, rewrite the sentence where the error is, and EXPLAIN what you did wrong. Try to choose errors that are important—not just typos. You can click on the comment on SafeAssign and see the explanation, or see my own comments to you.**

**When you have finished, submit your work to the WRITING LAB dropbox.**

**This is worth 100 points.**

# 128. Argument Essay

This assignment requires a dropbox.

When you submit work, click on WRITE SUBMISSION button. DO NOT submit in the COMMENTS section.

PART XVIII

# EXPERIENTIAL ESSAY (REAL-LIFE WRITING)





## 129. Experiential Essay (Real-Life Writing)

**A requirement for this class is a “real-life” essay or letter detailing a true experience you had; you should submit this to a real person or company.**

**The time has come to decide on your real-life, experiential essay or letter. For this final paper/essay assignment, you should be able to plan, write a draft, edit/proofread a piece of writing that you will be able to send to a real person.**

**There is no “right” or “wrong” topic, but here are some possible ideas to consider:**

**Write a complaint about a product you purchased which disappointed you. Maybe you bought a used Iphone that died after a week, or maybe you were deceived by a company in some way; for example, maybe you were bullied into buying rental car insurance that you did not need. Possibly you were wronged by some professional person or agency; for example, my dentist lied to me and told me I would have a tooth extracted, but she really performed very painful and unwanted gum surgery. (See my post below). On the other hand, maybe you are very happy/thrilled with some new product; for example, your brittle dry hair is shiny and soft after using Kerastase hair conditioner. Or, maybe you just stayed in a hotel where the manager went above and beyond what you expected. For example, the owners of a B & B in nearby Little Falls shoveled out my buried car and drove me to a hospital when I suffered an asthma attack. Another idea? Maybe you just want to write a letter of thanks to a teacher or professor who**

really made a difference in your education. I have written such letters to my dissertation advisor and another professor at Syracuse University.

1. GO to the discussion forum #9. POST your original idea for a real-life piece of writing. IMPORTANT:

READ WHAT I WROTE BACK TO YOU IN THE DISCUSSION. In some cases, I said you had a very workable topic; in others, I suggested you think of a different experience for your letter.

2. Decide on your topic

3. Write a draft of your letter/essay.

4. POST IT IN DISCUSSION FORUM #10. THIS DISCUSSION IS DIFFERENT, SINCE IT IS ALSO A PEER REVIEW.

THIS IS A DISCUSSION FORUM IN FORMAT-SO, FIRST POST YOUR OWN LETTER.

5. Then look at your partner's letter and complete the required peer review.

I have matched you up with a classmate, and you need to take a careful look at this person's draft and make suggestions for improvement. This is your final DISCUSSION GRADE for the course. (WORTH 100 POINTS). Of course, your partner needs to have a letter for you to read! And both of you need to work together on this assignment! Please contact me if your partner is missing! I will make other arrangements for you.

6. SUBMIT your edited/proofread letter in the MODULE #6 SafeAssign dropbox.

# 130. Experiential Essay draft letter

**THIS IS A DRAFT OF A LETTER—PLEASE MAKE SUGGESTIONS FOR ME AS TO WHAT I CAN DO TO IMPROVE THIS.**

notes made October 24th.

Yesterday I had an osseous surgery done by periodontist Kathy Stetler—without my consent or knowledge. I had been emailed a preoperative consent form on Oct. 20th, and I signed and took it to the office for the procedure on Oct. 23rd. I was supposed to have a “periodontal reevaluation” and a “possible extraction” due to a fractured root. This last upper right molar and the one next to it—Teeth 2 and 3)? had extensive work over the past year—Root canals in each tooth; preceded by a large filling in one of them; followed by crowns on both teeth. One (or both) never felt completely healed—since last January, 2015. Upon visiting my periodontist Dr Kathy Stetler in Melbourne, FL, for my 6 month cleaning, I complained of soreness when flossing between the teeth. She suspected a fractured root and thus I had the appointment for reevaluation and possible extraction on Oct. 23.

I was numbed and signed a consent form—a second one—since I had already turned in the first one at the front desk. I have a copy of that one with the proposed treatment and estimated costs. When the assistant brought me a second form, I was already in the dentist chair minus glasses and reclining. I told her TWICE that I had already signed consent, but I was asked to sign again. I did so—not being able to read it, and assuming it was a HIPAA release form.

the procedure began with no more discussion between me and the dentist. I closed my eyes and kept them closed almost all the time during the procedure.

It did not feel like a tooth was being pulled—at one point the assistant said I would be feeling some pressure—but nothing felt like an extraction—though I hadn't had one in several years. I was offered NO explanation during the entire process—no conversation at all took place—except the usual instruments/water/suction comments to the assistant.

Several different instruments were used—one was a loud drill—and I was puzzled why I would be getting any drilling done for an extraction. Finally it was done. I said: “what in the world were you two doing?” Referring to Dr. Stetler and her assistant. Dr. Stetler said something about people agreeing to procedures only if they're in pain. I don't remember her exact words, but that's definitely what I understood. Then I said: “You've been wanting to do this for years!” I then understood that she had done the gum surgery—though I had no name for it. She said very little—mumbled something—which is the way she always talks—I rarely understand what she's saying. I asked her if what she did would cure my painful tooth—She said : “You can always have an extraction” I had no idea what she meant—I thought I WAS having an extraction. I asked her if she had discovered a fractured root, and she said not that she could tell, then repeated AGAIN: “You can always have an extraction.” I tried to ask her if the gum surgery would get rid of the deep pockets (I've measured 7 on that tooth perhaps for the past 30 years). I think she said yes—and then she disappeared, not to be seen gain.

I was given post-op paperwork and made an appointment to have the stitches removed—and, of course, had to pay in full before leaving—This cost \$1,300.00 not the \$250–\$1000 estimated on the emailed form.

I am in pain, and very hopeful that I won't get an infection—I do not want to return to this woman for stitch removal—and I am trying to find somewhere else to go.

I read a post online from one dentist who described getting a procedure without discussion or informed consent as “battery” and “malpractice.” I think I'm still in shock the this happened to me.

## 131. Discussion Forum #9

This assignment requires a discussion forum.

Tells us what the topic of your essay is. Whom are you addressing? About what? What is the purpose? What do you expect/hope the outcome will be? Remember to respond to your classmates in a helpful way.

# 132. Instructions for Writing Lab #6

This assignment requires a dropbox.

Go back and click on your **ARGUMENT** essay that you submitted to SafeAssign.. You will see my comments and corrections throughout your essay. **PAY ATTENTION**, also, to the additional summary comments I wrote to you. **EVERYONE** should have my detailed comments on this piece. If you somehow missed doing this essay, then look at one of your earlier pieces of graded writing (essay/paper) from any other module. I'll be asking you to continue working on any writing weaknesses in **EACH** Writing Lab.

For your Writing Lab, choose **FIVE** of the errors from your writing. For each one, rewrite the sentence where the error is, and **EXPLAIN** what you did wrong. Try to choose errors that are important—not just typos. You can click on the comment on SafeAssign and see the explanation, or see my own comments to you.

When you have finished, submit your work to the **WRITING LAB** dropbox.

This is worth 100 points.

## 133. Discussion Forum #10

This assignment requires a discussion forum.

POST your own letter. Now look for your partner's letter and proceed.

Read and make suggestions...Don't say "good job" or "lousy letter" Be VERY specific. See if the letter makes sense, if the writer has a specific person/company in mind, if the goal/end result of the letter is clear, and THEN look for any errors you can find in grammar, usage, spelling, sentence structure.

**FIRST, READ YOUR PARTNER'S LETTER/ESSAY**

**When you click on "REPLY" to your partner's letter a new screen will appear—at the top it will say QUOTE ORIGINAL MESSAGE—DO THAT AND PASTE IT IN THE NEW BOX. NOW YOU CAN ACTUALLY WRITE ON YOUR PARTNER'S LETTER AND THEN RETURN IT TO THEM (SUBMIT)**





PART XIX

CULMINATING ACTIVITIES



## 134. Culminating Activity

This activity requires a dropbox.

**BEGIN THIS MODULE on 12/8-ALL WORK MUST BE SUBMITTED BY 12/12**

**THIS CONCLUDES YOUR GRADED COURSE WORK! No DISCUSSION OR WRITING LAB FOR THIS FINAL MODULE: CULMINATING ACTIVITY**

**this assignment includes a short reflection on what you've learned about yourself as a writer. You can include the strengths you've discovered-everyone has strong points-and the weaknesses that you still need to address. Pay special attention to any weaknesses you have worked on in the Writing Lab. Also, I'd like you to comment on which assignments you found most helpful or useful and which you think I should skip the next time around.**

**When you are finished, please submit your comments in the SafeAssign drop box.**

**Finally, you should go back and check in each module-to make sure you have submitted all required work-Check Writing Labs, Discussions, and Essay/Papers.**